



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Ephesians**

**Version 53**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2021-09-17

**Version:** 53

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2021-08-23

**Version:** 30

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2021-07-30

**Version:** 29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2021-09-07

**Version:** 2.1.23

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2021-09-14

**Version:** 0.22

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2021-06-28

**Version:** 22

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2021-06-23

**Version:** 25

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2021 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](http://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>9</b>
Ephesians	9
Introduction to Ephesians	10
Ephesians 1	13
Ephesians 2	43
Ephesians 3	71
Ephesians 4	96
Ephesians 5	134
Ephesians 6	173
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>203</b>
Abstract Nouns	204
Active or Passive	206
Apostrophe	209
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	211
Connect – Contrast Relationship	214
Connect – Goal (Purpose) Relationship	216
Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship	219
Double Negatives	221
Doublet	223
Ellipsis	225
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’	228
Forms of You	230
Hendiadys	231
How to Translate Names	234
Hyperbole	238
Idiom	242
Irony	244
Litotes	247
Merism	249
Metaphor	251
Metonymy	257
Nominal Adjectives	259
Predictive Past	261
Pronouns	263
Pronouns – When to Use Them	265
Simile	267
Symbolic Action	270
Synecdoche	272
Textual Variants	274
Translating Son and Father	276
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b>	<b>278</b>
admonish, warned, aware	279
adoption, adopt, adopted	280
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	281
age, aged	282
ambassador, representative	283
amen, truly	284

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .....	285
apostle, apostleship .....	287
armor, armory .....	288
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless .....	289
authority .....	290
baptize, baptized, baptism .....	291
bear, bearer, carry .....	293
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	294
beloved .....	296
bind, bond, bound .....	297
blameless .....	298
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous .....	299
bless, blessed, blessing .....	300
blood .....	302
boast, boastful .....	304
body .....	305
bold, boldness, emboldened .....	306
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee .....	307
breastplate, breastpiece .....	308
brother .....	309
call, call out .....	310
children, child, offspring .....	312
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect .....	314
Christ, Messiah .....	315
church, Church .....	317
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision .....	319
citizen, citizenship .....	321
clean, wash .....	322
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments .....	324
command, commandment .....	325
confidence, confident .....	326
cornerstone .....	327
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved .....	328
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ... ..	329
covenant .....	331
create, created, creation, creator .....	333
cross .....	334
darkness .....	335
day .....	336
deceive, lie, deception, illusions .....	337
die, dead, deadly, death .....	338
discipline, self-discipline .....	340
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious .....	341
doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge .....	342
dominion .....	343
drunk, drunkard .....	344
earth, land .....	345
envy, covet .....	346
Ephesus, Ephesian .....	347
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	348
evangelist .....	350
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	351

exhort, exhortation .....	353
faith .....	354
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	355
family, household .....	357
fear, afraid, frighten .....	358
filled with the Holy Spirit .....	359
flesh .....	360
fool, foolish, folly .....	361
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned .....	362
found, founder, foundation .....	364
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty .....	365
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful .....	366
generation .....	368
Gentile .....	369
gift .....	370
glory, glorious, glorify .....	371
God .....	373
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father .....	375
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	377
good news, gospel .....	379
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	381
grace, gracious .....	383
hard, harden, hardness .....	384
head .....	385
heart .....	386
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	387
heir .....	389
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit .....	390
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	392
honor .....	394
hope, hoped .....	395
household .....	396
humble, humbled, humility .....	397
imitate, imitator .....	398
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him .....	399
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	400
Israel, Israelites .....	402
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus .....	404
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven .....	406
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish .....	408
labor, laborer, work, hard work .....	410
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God .....	411
life, live, living, alive .....	413
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten .....	415
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if .....	416
lord, Lord, master, sir .....	417
love, beloved .....	419
lust, lustful, passions, desires .....	421
manager, steward, stewardship .....	422
member, body parts .....	423
mercy, merciful .....	424
might, mighty, mighty works .....	426

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded .....	427
multiply, multiplied, multiplication .....	428
mystery, hidden truth .....	429
name .....	430
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring .....	431
obey, keep .....	432
on high, in the highest .....	433
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs .....	434
partial, partiality .....	435
pastor .....	436
patient, patience, impatient .....	437
Paul, Saul .....	438
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	440
perfect, complete .....	441
persevere, perseverance .....	442
pledge, pledged .....	443
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess .....	444
power, powerful, powerfully .....	445
praise, praised, praiseworthy .....	447
pray, prayer .....	448
predestine, predestined .....	449
prison, prisoner, imprison .....	450
promise, promised .....	451
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	452
provoke, provoked, provocation .....	454
psalm .....	455
quench, quenched, unquenchable .....	456
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up, .....	457
rebuke, reprove .....	459
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance .....	460
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation .....	462
redeem, redeemer, redemption .....	463
reveal, revealed, revelation .....	464
revere, revered, reverence, reverent .....	465
right hand .....	466
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	468
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader .....	470
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	471
saint .....	473
sanctify, sanctification .....	474
Satan, devil, evil one .....	475
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	477
Savior, savior .....	479
seal, sealed, unsealed .....	480
send, sent, send out .....	481
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	482
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication .....	484
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	485
shield .....	487
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	488
son .....	490
Son of God, the Son .....	492

soul, self, person .....	494
spirit, wind, breath .....	495
strength, strengthen, strong .....	497
subject, be subject to, subjection .....	499
sword, swordsmen .....	500
teach, teaching, untaught .....	501
teacher, Teacher .....	502
temple, house, house of God .....	503
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire .....	505
time, untimely, date .....	506
tremble, stagger .....	507
trespass .....	508
tribulation, distresses, trouble .....	509
true, truth .....	510
Tychicus .....	512
understand, understanding, thinking .....	513
vain, vanity .....	514
walk, walked .....	515
water, deep .....	516
will of God .....	517
wine, wineskin, new wine .....	518
wise, wisdom .....	519
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... ..	520
work, works, deeds .....	522
world, worldly .....	523
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless .....	524
wrath, fury .....	525
<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>526</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	526
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors .....	532
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors .....	533
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .....	534
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors .....	534





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Ephesians**

## Introduction to Ephesians

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of Ephesians

Greeting and prayer for the spiritual blessings in Christ (1:1-23)

Sin and salvation (2:1-10)

Unity and peace (2:11-22)

Mystery of Christ in the believers, made known (3:1-13)

Prayer for riches of his glory to make the believers strong (3:14-21)

Unity of the Spirit, building up the Body of Christ (4:1-16)

New life (4:17-32)

Imitators of God (5:1-21)

1 Wives and husbands; children and parents; slaves and masters (5:22-6:9)

Armor of God (6:10-20)

Final greeting (6:21-24)

#### Who wrote the Book of Ephesians?

Paul wrote Ephesians. Paul was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

The Apostle Paul helped start the church in Ephesus on one of his trips. He also lived in Ephesus for a year and a half and helped the believers there. Paul probably wrote this letter while he was in prison in Rome.

#### What is the Book of Ephesians about?

Paul wrote this letter to the Christians in Ephesus to explain God's love for them in Christ Jesus. He described the blessings that God was giving them because they were now united with Christ. He explained that all believers are united together, whether Jew or Gentile. Paul also wanted to encourage them to live in a way that pleases God.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Ephesians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Ephesus" or "A Letter to the Christians in Ephesus." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What was the "mystery" in the book of Ephesians?

The expression translated in the ULT as "mystery" or "hidden" occurs six times. By it, Paul always meant something that God had to reveal to human beings because they could not know it on their own. It always referred to something about how God planned to save mankind. Sometimes it was about his plan to bring about peace between himself and mankind. Sometimes it was more specifically about his plan to save both Jews and Gentiles by uniting them through Christ. This hidden truth was that Gentiles are now able to benefit from the promises of Christ as equals with the Jews.

## What did Paul say about salvation and righteous living?

Paul said much about salvation and righteous living in this letter and in many of his letters. He said that God has been very kind and saved Christians because they believe in Jesus. Therefore, after they become Christians, they should live in a righteous way to show that they have faith in Christ. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### Singular and plural “you”

In this book, the word “I” refers to Paul. The word “you” is almost always plural and refers to the believers who may read this letter. The three exceptions to this are: 5:14, 6:2, and 6:3. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### What did Paul mean by the “new self” or the “new man”?

When Paul spoke of the “new self” or the “new man,” he meant the new nature that a believer receives from the Holy Spirit. This new nature was created in God’s image (See: 4:24). The phrase “new man” is also used for God bringing about peace between Jews and Gentiles. God brought them together as one people group that belong to him (See: 2:15).

### How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Ephesians in the ULT?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of several ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, the ULT uses the following principles: \* Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the use of “holy” to express the fact that God views Christians as sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another use of “holy” is to express the idea that God is perfect and faultless. A third use is to express the idea that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless, faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULT uses “holy,” “holy God,” “holy ones,” or “saints.” (See: 1:1, 4) \* Sometimes the meaning in a passage indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULT uses “saint” or “saints.” \* Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses “set apart,” “dedicated to,” or “reserved for.” (See: 3:5)

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

### What did Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?

This kind of expression occurs in 1:1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 20; 2:6, 7, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 21, 22; 3:5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 21; 4:1, 17, 21, 32; 5:8, 18, 19; 6:1, 10, 18, 21. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

### What are the major issues in the text of the book of Ephesians?

- “in Ephesus” (1:1). Some of the earliest manuscripts do not include this phrase. It is likely that Paul intended this letter to be read in many churches, including Ephesus and many other cities. He may have originally left a blank space for the city name to be filled in by those copying the letter and carrying it to different cities. But “Ephesus” is the only name found on manuscripts that have a city name. Therefore, the ULT, UST, and many modern versions include it.

- “because we are members of his body” (5:30). Most modern versions, including the ULT and UST, read in this way. Some older versions read, “because we are members of his body and of his bones.” Translators might decide to choose the second reading if other versions in their area have it that way. If translators choose the second reading, they should put the additional words inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that they are probably not original to the book of Ephesians.

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

# Ephesians 1

## Ephesians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### “I pray”

Paul structures part of this chapter like a prayer of praise to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is teaching the church in Ephesus. He also tells the Ephesians how he is praying for them.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Predestination

Many scholars believe this chapter teaches on a subject known as “predestination.” See the use of the word “predestine” in 1:5, 11. Some scholars take this to indicate that God has, from before the foundation of the world, chosen some people to save. Christians have different views on what the Bible teaches on this subject, so translators need to take extra care when translating this chapter. (See: [predestine](#), [predestined](#))

# Ephesians 1:1

## General Information:

Paul names himself as the writer of this letter to the believers in the church at Ephesus (and elsewhere). Except where noted, all instances of “you” and “your” refer to the Ephesian believers as well as to all believers, and so are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

## Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus ... to the saints who are

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and the intended audience. Alternate translation: “I, Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ ... write this letter to you, God’s holy people”

## in Christ Jesus (ULT) to the Messiah Jesus (UST)

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him, picturing believers as being surrounded by Christ. Alternate Translation: “in close relationship to Christ Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [an apostle](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [the will of God](#)
- [of God](#)
- [to...saints](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [faithful](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [I am Paul](#)
- [The Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [who are loyal](#)
- [to the Messiah Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [sent me to represent him](#)

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> [Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus](#) through [the will of God](#), to the [saints](#) who are [[in Ephesus](#)] <sup>[1]</sup> and [faithful in Christ Jesus](#).

## UST

<sup>1</sup> I am Paul. The Messiah Jesus sent me to represent him because [that is what God wanted](#). I write this letter to the [people whom God has set apart for himself](#) who are living [[in the city of Ephesus](#)] <sup>[1]</sup> and [who are loyal to the Messiah Jesus](#).

- that is what God wanted
- God
- people whom God has set apart for himself
- the city of Ephesus

## Ephesians 1:2

**Grace to you and peace (ULT)  
will continue to be kind to you and to give you  
a peaceful spirit (UST)**

This is a common greeting and blessing that Paul often uses in the beginning of his letters. Use a form in your language that makes it clear that this is a greeting and blessing.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Grace
- peace
- God...Father
- the Lord
- Jesus
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- I pray that God...Father
- and Jesus
- our Messiah
- our Lord
- will continue to be kind
- to give...a peaceful spirit

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> I pray that God our Father and Jesus our Messiah and our Lord will continue to be kind to you and to give you a peaceful spirit.



# Ephesians 1:3

## General Information:

In this book, unless otherwise stated, the words “us” and “we” refer to Paul, the believers in Ephesus, and all believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

## Connecting Statement:

Paul opens his letter by talking about the believers’ position and their safety before God.

## Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)

You can state this in an active form. Alternate translation: “Let us praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the...who has blessed...us (ULT) God...has blessed us (UST)

“for God has blessed us”

## every spiritual blessing (ULT) every kind of spiritual blessing (UST)

“every blessing coming from the Spirit of God”

## with...the heavenly places (ULT) with...that comes from heaven (UST)

“in the supernatural world.” The word **heavenly** refers to the place where God is.

## in Christ (ULT) because we belong to the Messiah (UST)

This could mean: (1) Here, **in Christ** has its general meaning as a metaphor referring to our close relationship with Christ. Alternate translation: “by uniting us with Christ” or “because we are united with Christ” (2) Here the phrase **in Christ** refers to what Christ has done. Alternate translation: “through Christ” or “through what Christ has done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed be
- who has blessed
- blessing
- God and Father

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Christ,

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Praise God, the Father of our Lord Jesus the Messiah! He has blessed us with every kind of spiritual blessing that comes from heaven because we belong to the Messiah.

- of...Lord
- Jesus
- Christ
- Christ
- spiritual
- heavenly places
- in Christ

## Translation Words - UST

- Praise
- has blessed
- blessing
- Lord
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- the Messiah
- spiritual
- that comes from heaven
- because we belong to the Messiah
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

## Ephesians 1:4

### holy and blameless (ULT) completely holy (UST)

Paul uses these two similar words to emphasize moral goodness. If your language does not have two similar words, you can use one word for both, as in the UST. (See: [Doublet](#))

### blameless (ULT) completely holy (UST)

The word **blameless** contains two negative ideas: “blame” or “fault,” and “-less,” which means “without.” If it is clearer in your language, the two negative ideas can be replaced with the corresponding positive idea, “perfect.” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- just as
- he chose
- the foundation
- of the world
- holy
- blameless
- love

### Translation Words - UST

- In fact
- God created
- the world
- he chose
- completely holy
- completely holy
- Because God loves us

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> just as he chose us in him from the foundation of the world, that we would be holy and blameless before him. In love

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> In fact, even before God created the world, he chose us to belong to the Messiah, so that the Messiah could make us completely holy for him. Because God loves us,

# Ephesians 1:5

## General Information:

The words “his,” “He,” and “he” refer to God.

**he predestined us for adoption (ULT)**  
**he decided long ago to adopt us (UST)**

The word **us** refers to Paul, the Ephesian church, and all believers in Christ. Alternate translation: “God planned long ago to adopt us” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**he predestined us (ULT)**  
**he decided long ago...us (UST)**

“God chose us ahead of time” or “God chose us long ago”

**for adoption (ULT)**  
**to adopt (UST)**

Here, **adoption** is a metaphor that refers to becoming part of God’s family. Alternate translation: “to become his children” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**through Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**by means of Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

God brought believers into his family by the work of Jesus Christ.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [he predestined](#)
- [adoption](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [good pleasure](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [he decided long ago](#)
- [to adopt](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [It pleased him to do this](#)

## ULT

<sup>5</sup> [he predestined](#) us for [adoption](#) through [Jesus Christ](#) to himself, according to the [good pleasure](#) of his will,

## UST

<sup>5</sup> [he decided long ago to adopt](#) us as his own children by means of [Jesus the Messiah](#). [It pleased him to do this](#), so he did what he wanted to do.

## Ephesians 1:6

**he has freely given us in the Beloved One (ULT)**

**he blessed us by means of his Son whom he loves (UST)**

“he has kindly given to us by means of the One whom he loves”

**the Beloved One (ULT)**

**his Son whom he loves (UST)**

“the One he loves, Jesus Christ” or “his Son, whom he loves”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the praise
- of the glory
- of...grace
- Beloved One

### Translation Words - UST

- we now praise God
- for being so...kind to us, far beyond what we could deserve
- amazingly
- his Son whom he loves

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> to the praise of the glory of his grace that he has freely given us in the Beloved One,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Because of this, we now praise God for being so amazingly kind to us, far beyond what we could deserve, as he blessed us by means of his Son whom he loves.

## Ephesians 1:7

**through his blood (ULT)**

**When Jesus died in our place...when he died for us (UST)**

The **blood** of Jesus is a metonym for his death. Alternate translation: "because he died" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the riches of his grace (ULT)**

**that is how abundantly and generously kind he is (UST)**

Paul speaks of God's grace as if it were material wealth. Alternate translation: "greatness of God's grace" or "abundance of God's grace" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> in whom we have [redemption](#) through his [blood](#), the [forgiveness of trespasses](#), according to the riches of his [grace](#),

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [When Jesus died in our place](#), he [paid the price for our sin](#). That is, [when he died for us](#), [God forgave us our sins](#) because that is how abundantly and generously [kind](#) he is.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [redemption](#)
- [blood](#)
- [forgiveness](#)
- [of trespasses](#)
- [of...grace](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [When Jesus died in our place...when he died for us](#)
- [paid the price for our sin](#)
- [That is...God forgave us](#)
- [our sins](#)
- [kind](#)

## Ephesians 1:8

**which he caused to abound to us (ULT)**  
**God knew that we would need him to be**  
**extremely kind to us in this way (UST)**

“which he gave us in a great amount” or “being extremely kind to us”

**in all wisdom and understanding (ULT)**  
**because God knows everything and is**  
**completely wise (UST)**

Possible meanings are: (1) “because he has all wisdom and understanding” (2) “so that we might have great wisdom and understanding.”

**wisdom and understanding (ULT)**  
**because God knows...and...wise (UST)**

Here, **wisdom** and **understanding** mean very similar things. If your language does not have two similar words, you can use one word for both. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he caused to abound](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [understanding](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God knew that we would need him to be extremely kind...in this way](#)
- [because God knows](#)
- [wise](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> which [he caused to abound](#) to us in all [wisdom](#) and [understanding](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [God knew that we would need him to be extremely kind](#) to us [in this way](#) [because God knows](#) everything and is completely [wise](#).

## Ephesians 1:9

**his...according to...good pleasure (ULT)**

**his...a plan that...was pleased (UST)**

Possible meanings are: (1) "because he wanted to make it known to us" (2) "which was what he wanted."

**which he had planned in him (ULT)**

**to accomplish through the work of the Messiah (UST)**

"as he demonstrated this purpose in Christ"

**in him (ULT)**

**through the work of the Messiah (UST)**

"by means of Christ"

### Translation Words - ULT

- He made known
- mystery
- of...his...will

### Translation Words - UST

- In this way, God has now revealed
- his...plan
- that he had not revealed to anyone before

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He made known to us the mystery of his will according to his good pleasure, which he had planned in him,

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> In this way, God has now revealed to us his plan that he had not revealed to anyone before—a plan that he was pleased to accomplish through the work of the Messiah.



## Ephesians 1:10

### with a view to an administration (ULT)

#### In this plan (UST)

A new sentence can be started here. Alternate translation: “He did this with a view to an administration” or “He did this, thinking about a stewardship”

### of the fullness of time (ULT)

#### when the time was just right (UST)

“when the time is right” or “at the time that he has appointed”

### in...him (ULT)

#### under...would belong to the Messiah (UST)

“under his rule” or “under his authority”

### Translation Words - ULT

- an administration
- of time
- in Christ
- Christ
- heaven
- earth

### Translation Words - UST

- this plan
- time
- the Messiah...under himself
- Messiah...himself
- heaven
- earth

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> with a view to an administration of the fullness of time, to bring all things together in Christ, the things in heaven and the things on earth, in him,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> In this plan, when the time was just right, the Messiah would unite all things under himself so that all things in heaven and all things on earth would belong to the Messiah.

## Ephesians 1:11

**we were also allotted as a possession. We were predestined (ULT)**

**God has also claimed us as his own. He planned to do this long ago (UST)**

Both pronouns **we** and **We** are inclusive in this verse. Paul is referring to all Christians, who were predestined to belong to Christ. In verses 12 and 13 he will divide this group into “we” (exclusive) Jewish Christians and “you” Gentile Christians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**we were also allotted as a possession (ULT)**  
**God has also claimed us as his own (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Possible meanings are: (1) “God also chose us to be his possession” (2) “God also chose us to be heirs.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**We were predestined (ULT)**  
**He planned to do this long ago (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God chose us ahead of time” or “God chose us long ago” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [We were predestined](#)
- [counsel](#)
- [of...his...will](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He planned to do this long ago](#)
- [he...wishes to do](#)
- [wishes to do](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> in whom we were also allotted as a possession. [We were predestined](#) according to the purpose of him who works out everything according to the [counsel](#) of [his will](#),

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Because of what the Messiah has done, God has also claimed us as his own. [He planned to do this long ago](#), and he always does exactly what [he wishes to do](#).

## Ephesians 1:12

**we...who were the first to have confident hope in Christ (ULT)**

**we Jews...who were the first to trust in the Messiah (UST)**

Here, the word **we** is exclusive and refers to the Jewish believers who first heard the good news, not the believers at Ephesus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**so that we ... would be for the praise of his glory**

“so that we ... would live to praise him for his glory”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who were the first to have confident hope](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [the praise](#)
- [of...glory](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [first to trust](#)
- [in the Messiah](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [praise God](#)
- [because...is so great](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> so that we [who were the first to have confident hope in Christ](#), would be for the praise of his [glory](#).

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> In God's plan, we Jews, who were the [first to trust in the Messiah](#), would live to [praise God because](#) he [is so great](#).

# Ephesians 1:13

## General Information:

Paul has been speaking in the previous two verses about himself and the other Jewish believers, but now he begins speaking about the Ephesian believers.

### the word of truth (ULT) the true message (UST)

Possible meanings are: (1) "the message about the truth" (2) "the true message."

### you were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit (ULT) When you did that, God marked you...by giving you the Holy Spirit, as he had promised to do (UST)

In this metaphor Paul pictures the Holy Spirit as a seal, comparing him to the wax that was placed on a letter and stamped with a symbol representing the person who wrote the letter. Paul uses this custom as a picture to show how God has used the Holy Spirit to assure us that we belong to him. Alternate translation: "God has placed the Holy Spirit that he promised on you as if he were a seal" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you were sealed (ULT) When you did that, God marked you...by giving you (UST)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God has sealed you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- of truth
- gospel
- of...salvation
- you believed
- you were sealed
- with...promised Holy Spirit
- promised

## Translation Words - UST

- true
- good news
- how God saves
- you believed
- When you did that, God marked you...by giving you
- Holy Spirit, as he had promised to do

## ULT

<sup>13</sup> In him, you also, when you had heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and you believed in him, you were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit,

## UST

<sup>13</sup> Then you non-Jews also heard the true message, the good news of how God saves you, and you believed in the Messiah. When you did that, God marked you as belonging to the Messiah by giving you the Holy Spirit, as he had promised to do.

- as he had promised to do

## Ephesians 1:14

**a down payment of our inheritance (ULT)  
like a down payment that proves that God will  
also give to us everything else that he has  
promised to give to us (UST)**

Receiving what God has promised is spoken of in terms of one inheriting property or wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: “an initial portion that we will receive from what God has promised” or “a guarantee that we will receive what God has promised to give us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a down payment
- of...inheritance
- the redemption
- of...full possession
- the praise
- of...glory

### Translation Words - UST

- like a down payment that proves that God will also give
- everything else that he has promised to give
- he will release
- everything that he has for us
- Praise God
- because...is so great

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> who is a down payment of our inheritance until the redemption of the full possession, to the praise of his glory.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> The Holy Spirit is like a down payment that proves that God will also give to us everything else that he has promised to give to us at that time when he will release everything that he has for us. Praise God because he is so great!

## Ephesians 1:15

### Connecting Statement:

Paul prays for the Ephesian believers and praises God for the power that believers have through Christ.

### Because of this (ULT)

### Because God has done all of this for you (UST)

The connecting phrase **Because of this** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the Ephesians had believed the gospel and had been sealed by the Holy Spirit. The result is that Paul praises God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- in the Lord Jesus
- Lord
- Jesus
- love
- saints

### Translation Words - UST

- how you trust
- in the Lord Jesus
- Lord
- Jesus
- how much you love
- believers

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Because of this, ever since I heard about your [faith in the Lord Jesus](#) and the [love](#) <sup>[2]</sup> for all the [saints](#),

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Because God has done all of this for you, and because people have told me [how you trust in the Lord Jesus](#) and [how much you love](#) all the [believers](#),

## Ephesians 1:16

### I have not stopped giving thanks (ULT)

### I thank God...constantly (UST)

Paul uses **not stopped** to emphasize that he continues to thank God.  
Alternate translation: "I continue to thank God" (See: [Litotes](#))

### I have not stopped giving thanks (ULT)

### I thank God...constantly (UST)

Paul uses this exaggeration to emphasize that he thanks God very often. Alternate translation: "I continue to thank God" or "I often thank God" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in...prayers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [pray to him](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> I have not stopped giving thanks for you, making mention of you in my [prayers](#),

### UST

<sup>16</sup> I thank God for you constantly as I talk to God about you when I [pray to him](#).



## Ephesians 1:17

### so that (ULT)

### I pray that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Paul prays for the Ephesians. The result is that God would enlighten the Ephesians about all that he has done for them through Christ. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him (ULT)**  
**his Spirit to make you wise and to reveal God to you so that you can continually know him better (UST)**

“spiritual wisdom to understand his revelation”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of...Lord
- Jesus
- Christ
- the Father
- of glory
- a spirit
- of wisdom
- revelation
- the knowledge

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Lord
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- glorious
- the...Father
- his Spirit
- to make you wise
- to reveal God to you
- you can continually know...better

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> so that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, will give to you a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> I pray that the God of our Lord Jesus the Messiah, the glorious Father, will give you his Spirit to make you wise and to reveal God to you so that you can continually know him better.

## Ephesians 1:18

**that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened (ULT)**

**I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to a person's mind or thinking. Alternate Translation: "that you may gain understanding" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened (ULT)**

**I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are (UST)**

You can state this in the active tense. Alternate translation: "that God may give you understanding" or "that God may enlighten your mind" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the eyes of your heart (ULT)**

**I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are (UST)**

The phrase **eyes of your heart** is a metaphor for one's ability to gain understanding. Alternate translation: "that you may gain understanding and be enlightened" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**that...may be enlightened (ULT)**

**I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are (UST)**

"that ... may be made to see"

**your...of...his...calling (ULT)**

**I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are...because... he...has called us to be his people (UST)**

The **calling** of God refers to his choosing people to believe in him. Alternate translation: "that you have because he chose you to be his people"

**of his inheritance (ULT)**

**are the things he promises to give to us (UST)**

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if one were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> that the eyes of your [heart](#) may be enlightened so that you [may know](#) what is the [hope](#) of his [calling](#) and what are the riches of the [glory](#) of his [inheritance](#) in the [saints](#),

### UST

<sup>18</sup> I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are so that you may know the wonderful plan that God has for us because he has called us to be his people. I pray that you may know how wonderful and abundant are the things he promises to give to us and to all the believers.

## **the saints (ULT)** **and to all the believers (UST)**

“those whom he has set apart for himself” or “those who belong completely to him”

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- of...heart
- may know
- hope
- of...calling
- of...glory
- of...inheritance
- saints

### **Translation Words - UST**

- I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are
- may know
- the wonderful plan that God has for us
- because...has called us to be his people
- wonderful
- are the things...promises to give to us
- and to all the believers

## Ephesians 1:19

**the incomparable greatness of his power (ULT)**

**you will know how exceedingly powerfully... God...acts (UST)**

“God’s power, which is far beyond all other power”

**toward us who believe (ULT)**

**for us who believe in the Messiah (UST)**

“for us who believe”

**of his power...the working of the force...of...strength (ULT)**

**you will know how exceedingly powerfully...God...acts...just as...powerfully... strong...for us (UST)**

“his great power that is at work for us”

**of the force of his strength (ULT)**

**He is...powerfully strong (UST)**

The words **force** and **strength** have very similar meanings and may be combined. Alternate translation: “of his great strength” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...power
- who believe
- of...strength

### Translation Words - UST

- you will know how exceedingly powerfully...acts
- believe in the Messiah
- strong

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> and what is the incomparable greatness of his **power** toward us **who believe**, according to the working of the force of his **strength**,

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> And I pray that **you will know how exceedingly powerfully** God **acts** for us who **believe in the Messiah**. He is just as powerfully **strong** for us

## Ephesians 1:20

**when he raised him from the dead (ULT)**  
**when he caused the Messiah to become alive**  
**again after he died (UST)**

“when he made him alive again”

**from the dead (ULT)**  
**when he caused the Messiah to become alive**  
**again after he died (UST)**

This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again. Alternate translation: “from among all those who have died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> which he worked [in Christ when he raised](#) him from [the dead](#) and seated him at his [right hand](#) in the [heavenly places](#),

### UST

<sup>20</sup> as he was [for the Messiah when he caused the Messiah to become alive again after he died](#), and raised him to [the place of highest honor](#) in [heaven](#).

**seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places (ULT)**  
**raised him to the place of highest honor in heaven (UST)**

The person who sits **at the right hand** of a king sits at his right side and rules with all the authority of the king at whose right hand or side he sits. This is a metonym of location that represents the authority that the person in that location possesses. Alternate translation: “gave him all authority to rule from heaven” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**seated him at his right hand (ULT)**  
**raised him to the place of highest honor (UST)**

To sit at the **right hand** of God is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “seated him in the place of honor and authority beside him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**in...the heavenly places (ULT)**  
**for...heaven (UST)**

“in the supernatural world.” The word **heavenly** refers to the place where God is. See how you translated this in [Ephesians 1:3](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [when he raised](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [heavenly places](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [for the Messiah](#)

- Messiah
- when he caused the Messiah to become alive again after he died
- when he caused the Messiah to become alive again after he died
- the place of highest honor
- heaven

## Ephesians 1:21

**far above all rule and authority and power and dominion (ULT)**

**The Messiah rules as supreme there over every ruler and powerful spirit on every level of authority (UST)**

These are all terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic. If your language does not have four different terms for rulers or authorities, you can combine them. Alternate translation: "far above all types of supernatural beings" (See: [Doublet](#))

**every name that is named (ULT)**  
**over every being that people revere (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Possible meaning for alternate translation: (1) "every name that man gives" (2) "every name that God gives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**name (ULT)**  
**being that people revere (UST)**

This could mean: (1) This is a title. (2) This refers to a position of authority.

**in this age (ULT)**  
**now (UST)**

"at this time"

**in...age...age to come (ULT)**  
**now...forever (UST)**

"in the future"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rule](#)
- [authority](#)
- [power](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [name that is named](#)
- [age](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ruler](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> far above all [rule](#) and [authority](#) and [power](#) and [dominion](#) and every [name that is named](#), not only in this [age](#), but also in the age to come.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> The Messiah rules as supreme there over every [ruler](#) and [powerful spirit on every level of authority](#) and over every [being that people revere](#). He rules over them not only [now](#), but forever.

- powerful spirit
- on every level of authority
- on every level of authority
- being that people revere
- now



## Ephesians 1:22

### under his feet (ULT)

### God has made...to be subject...to the Messiah (UST)

Here, **feet** represents Christ's lordship, authority, and power.  
Alternate translation: "under Christ's power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### head over all things (ULT)

### the ruler over everything (UST)

Here, **head** is a metaphor that refers to the leader or the one who is in charge. Alternate translation: "ruler over all things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [to...church](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the ruler](#)
- [among all believers everywhere](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And he put all things under his feet and gave him as [head](#) over all things to the [church](#),

### UST

<sup>22</sup> God has made everything to be subject to the Messiah and has appointed the Messiah as [the ruler](#) over everything [among all believers everywhere](#).

## Ephesians 1:23

**his body (ULT)**  
**the Messiah as the parts of a person's body**  
**relate to its head (UST)**

Just as the head (verse 22) rules all things pertaining to a human body, so Christ is the head of the church body. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**body...fullness of the one who fills all in all (ULT)**

"for Christ fills the church with his life and power just as he gives life to all things"

**body...fullness (ULT)**  
**as the parts of a person's body relate to its**  
**head...He supplies what is lacking for all believers (UST)**

This could mean: (1) It has a passive sense, which would mean that Christ fills or completes the church. (2) It has an active sense, which would mean that the church completes Christ (as a body completes a head).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [as the parts of a person's body relate to its head](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> which is his [body](#), the fullness of the one who fills all in all.

1:1 <sup>[1]</sup>.

1:15 <sup>[2]</sup>, but the best manuscripts include it.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> We believers relate to the Messiah [as the parts of a person's body relate to its head](#). He supplies what is lacking for all believers just as he completes everything everywhere.

1:1 <sup>[1]</sup>.

## Ephesians 2

### Ephesians 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter focuses on the life that a Christian had before coming to believe in Jesus. Paul then uses this information to explain how a person's former way of living is distinct from a Christian's new identity "in Christ." (See: [faith](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### One body

Paul teaches about the church in this chapter. The church is made of two different groups of people (Jews and Gentiles). They are now one group or "body." The church is also known as the body of Christ. Jews and Gentiles are united in Christ.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### "Dead in trespasses and sins"

Paul teaches that those who are not Christians are "dead" in their sin. Sin binds or enslaves them. This makes them spiritually "dead." Paul writes that God makes Christians alive in Christ. (See: [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [faith](#) and [Metaphor](#))

##### Descriptions of worldly living

Paul uses many different ways to describe how non-Christians act. They "lived according to the ways of this world" and are "living according to the ruler of the authorities of the air," "fulfilling the evil desires of our sinful nature," and "carrying out the desires of the body and of the mind."

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### "It is the gift of God"

Some scholars believe "it" here refers to being saved. Other scholars believe that it is faith that is the gift of God. Because of how the Greek tenses agree, "it" here probably refers to both things: the gift is that we are saved by God's grace through faith.

##### Flesh

"Flesh" is sometimes used as a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. The phrase "Gentiles in the flesh" indicates the Ephesians once lived without any concern for God. But "flesh" is also used in this verse to refer to the physical person, similar to "body part of man." (See: [flesh](#))

## Ephesians 2:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers of their past and the way they now are before God.

**you were dead in your trespasses and sins (ULT)**

**you were spiritually dead—you were unable to stop sinning (UST)**

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And you were **dead** in your **trespasses** and **sins**,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Before you trusted the Messiah, you were **spiritually dead**—**you were unable to stop sinning**.

This shows how the inability of a sinful person to obey God is similar to a dead person's inability to respond physically. Alternate translation: "you were spiritually dead, unable to do anything but sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in your trespasses and sins (ULT)**

**you were unable to stop sinning (UST)**

The words **trespasses** and **sins** have similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize the greatness of the people's sin. If your language has just one word for this, the two words can be combined. Alternate translation: "your many sins" (See: [Doublet](#))

**in your trespasses and sins (ULT)**

**you were unable to stop sinning (UST)**

The words **trespasses** and **sins** are abstract nouns that represent actions. You can use an adjective or a verb for this if that would be clearer. Alternate translation: "the sinful things that you did" or "always sinning against God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- **dead**
- **trespasses**
- **sins**

### Translation Words - UST

- **spiritually dead**
- **you were unable to stop sinning**
- **you were unable to stop sinning**

## Ephesians 2:2

### in which you once walked (ULT)

### You used to live in a sinful way (UST)

Here, **walk** is a metaphor for the way a person lives. Alternate translation: “which is how you lived” or “which you did habitually” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### according to the age of this world (ULT)

### guided by the spirit of this world (UST)

The apostles often used **world** to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. Alternate translation: “according to the values of people living in the world” or “following the principles of this present world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the...of...world...ruler of the authorities of...air (ULT)

### the...of...ruler of the evil spirits who controls the authorities of this world (UST)

This refers to the devil or Satan.

### the spirit that is now working

“the spirit of Satan, who is currently working”

### the sons of disobedience (ULT)

### the people who disobey God (UST)

“people who routinely disobey God” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- you...walked
- age
- of...world
- ruler
- of...authorities
- spirit
- sons
- of disobedience

## Translation Words - UST

- You...live
- spirit

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> in which you once [walked](#) according to the [age](#) of this [world](#), according to the [ruler](#) of the [authorities](#) of the air, the [spirit](#) that is now working in the [sons of disobedience](#),

### UST

<sup>2</sup> You used to [live](#) in a sinful way, guided by the [spirit](#) of this [world](#). You were guided by the [ruler](#) of the [evil spirits who controls the authorities of this world](#). [This ruler is Satan](#), who now works through the [people who disobey God](#).

- world
- ruler
- evil spirits who controls the authorities of this world
- This ruler is Satan
- people
- who disobey God

## Ephesians 2:3

**the desires of the body and of the mind (ULT)  
things that would bring pleasure to our  
bodies and our minds (UST)**

The words **body** and **mind** represent the entire person. Alternate Translation: "the selfish things that people want to do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**children...of wrath (ULT)  
We deserved that God should be very angry  
with us...We deserved that God should be very  
angry with us (UST)**

"people with whom God is angry" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil desires](#)
- [of...flesh](#)
- [of...body](#) (2)
- [of...mind](#)
- [of wrath](#)
- [as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the evil things](#)
- [bodies](#) (2)
- [that we desired](#)
- [minds](#)
- [We deserved that God should be very angry with us](#)
- [just as he is with](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> in which we all also once lived in the [evil desires](#) of our [flesh](#), fulfilling the desires of the [body](#) and of the [mind](#). And we were by nature children [of wrath](#), [as](#) also the rest.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> All of us used to live in the same way as these people who disobey God; we did [the evil things that we desired](#), things that would bring pleasure to our [bodies](#) and our [minds](#). [We deserved that God should be very angry with us](#), [just as he is with](#) the other people.

## Ephesians 2:4

### But (ULT)

### But (UST)

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The love and mercy of God is in sharp contrast to the evil way the Ephesians lived before they believed in God. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### God...is rich in mercy (ULT)

### God...is very merciful to us (UST)

The word **mercy** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “God is abundantly merciful” or “God is very kind to us” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### because of his great love with which he loved us (ULT)

### because he loves us very much (UST)

The word **love** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “because he loved us so very much” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- mercy
- love
- he loved

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- merciful to us
- he loves...very much
- he loves...very much

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But God is rich in mercy because of his great love with which he loved us.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> But God is very merciful to us because he loves us very much.



## Ephesians 2:5

**by grace you have been saved (ULT)  
when God saved you from being spiritually  
dead, he was being very kind to you in a way  
that you did not deserve (UST)**

You can state this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God saved you by being gracious to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by grace you have been saved (ULT)  
when God saved you from being spiritually  
dead, he was being very kind to you in a way  
that you did not deserve (UST)**

The word **grace** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "God saved you by being extremely kind to you" or "God saved you as a free gift" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And while we were [dead in trespasses](#), he made us alive together [in Christ](#)—[by grace](#) you have been [saved](#)—

### UST

<sup>5</sup> God loved us so much that even when we were [spiritually dead and constantly sinning](#), he made us alive by joining us [to the Messiah](#). Remember, [when God saved you from being spiritually dead, he was being very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [dead](#)
- [in trespasses](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [by grace](#)
- [saved](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [spiritually dead](#)
- [and constantly sinning](#)
- [to the Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [when...saved you from being spiritually dead, he...you](#)
- [God...was being very kind to you in a way that...did not deserve](#)

## Ephesians 2:6

**raised us up with him (ULT)**  
**God saved us from being spiritually dead just as he raised Jesus from being physically dead and he made us spiritually alive with him (UST)**

Here, **raised up** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. (See: [Idiom](#))

**raised us up with him (ULT)**  
**God saved us from being spiritually dead just as he raised Jesus from being physically dead and he made us spiritually alive with him (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Because God has caused Christ to come alive again, God has already given Paul and the believers in Ephesus new spiritual life. Alternate translation: "God has given us new life because we belong to Christ" (2) Because God has caused Christ to come alive again, the believers in Ephesus can know that after they die they will live with Christ, and Paul can speak of the believers living again as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: "we can be sure that God will give us life just as he has caused Christ to come alive again" (See: [Predictive Past](#))

**seated us with him (ULT)**  
**he gave us seats of honor to rule (UST)**

Paul talks about the believers as already **seated** in heaven with Christ because, although it is something that will happen in the future, it was guaranteed by what Christ did in the past. Alternate translation: "it is as though God has already seated us next to Christ" (See: [Predictive Past](#))

**in the heavenly places (ULT)**  
**in heaven (UST)**

The phrase **heavenly places** refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in [Ephesians 1:3](#). Alternate translation: "in the supernatural world"

**in...Christ Jesus (ULT)**  
**the Messiah Jesus in (UST)**

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [raised us up with him](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and [raised us up with him](#) and seated us with him in the [heavenly places in Christ Jesus](#),

### UST

<sup>6</sup> God saved us from being spiritually dead just as he raised Jesus from being physically dead and he made us spiritually alive with him. Then he gave us seats of honor to rule [with the Messiah Jesus](#) in [heaven](#).

- heavenly places
- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus

## Translation Words - UST

- God saved us from being spiritually dead just as he raised Jesus from being physically dead and he made us spiritually alive with him
- with the Messiah Jesus
- the Messiah
- Jesus
- heaven

## Ephesians 2:7

### so that (ULT)

### He did that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God raising up believers and seating them in heaven with Christ is to show the extent of his grace in Christ. (See: [Connect - Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### in the ages that are coming

“in the future”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ages](#)
- [of...grace](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all future times](#)
- [gracious](#)
- [by joining us to the Messiah Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> so that in the [ages](#) that are coming he might show the immeasurably great riches of his [grace](#) in his kindness to us [in Christ Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> He did that to show to everyone in [all future times](#) how exceedingly [gracious](#) he is in being kind to us [by joining us to the Messiah Jesus](#).

## Ephesians 2:8

**For (ULT)**

**So (UST)**

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the Ephesians had been saved by God, and not by their own good works. The result is that people would see the grace of God to us in Christ. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**For by grace you have been saved through faith (ULT)**

**So God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead. He did this because you trust in Jesus (UST)**

You can state this actively. Alternate translation: “God saved you by grace because of your faith in him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**For by grace you have been saved (ULT)**

**So God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead (UST)**

The word **grace** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “God saved you as a free gift” or “God saved you because of his extreme kindness to you” See how you translated this phrase in [Ephesians 2:5](#). (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**this (ULT)**

**You have not saved yourselves (UST)**

The word **this** refers back to **by grace you have been saved by faith**.

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> For [by grace](#) you have been [saved](#) through [faith](#), and this is not from yourselves; it is the [gift of God](#),

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> So [God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead](#). He did this because [you trust in Jesus](#). You have not saved yourselves; [this is a gift from God](#)—

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by grace](#)
- [saved](#)
- [faith](#)
- [gift](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve](#)
- [when he saved you from being spiritually dead](#)
- [you trust in Jesus](#)
- [this is a gift](#)
- [from God](#)

## Ephesians 2:9

**not from works, so that no one may boast (ULT)**

**a gift that no one can earn, so no one can boast and say that he has saved himself (UST)**

You may want to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Salvation does not come from works, so that no one may boast" or "God does not save a person because of what that person does, so no one can boast and say that he earned his salvation"

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> not from [works](#), so that no one [may boast](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [a gift that no one can earn](#), so no one [can boast and say that he has saved himself](#).

**so that (ULT)**

**so (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God for saving believers by grace instead of by their works is that no person might boast. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [works](#)
- [may boast](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [a gift that no one can earn](#)
- [can boast and say that he has saved himself](#)

## Ephesians 2:10

### For (ULT)

### So (UST)

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God is the one who created us to do any good works that we do. The result is that people cannot boast. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### in Christ Jesus (ULT)

### through the Messiah Jesus (UST)

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

### so that (ULT)

### for (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God creating us as he did is that we would do the good works that he intended for us to do. (See: [Connect - Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### we would walk in them (ULT)

### us to do (UST)

To **walk** on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Here, **in them** refers to the “good works.” Alternate translation: “we would always and continually do those good deeds” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For we are his workmanship, [created in Christ Jesus](#) for [good works](#) that [God](#) prepared beforehand, so that [we would walk](#) in them.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So God is making us what he wants us to be; [through the Messiah Jesus he has created us as new people](#) to do [good things](#)—things that [God](#) had previously arranged for [us to do](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [created](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [good](#)
- [works](#)
- [God](#)
- [we would walk](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [through the Messiah Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [he has created us as new people](#)
- [good](#)
- [things](#)

- God
- us to do



## Ephesians 2:11

### Therefore (ULT)

### So (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that they were saved by God and not by anything they had done on their own. The result is that the Ephesians would remember that they were once separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds these believers that God has now made Gentiles and Jews into one body through Christ and his cross.

### Gentiles in the flesh (ULT) non-Jewish people according to who your ancestors were did not belong to God's people (UST)

This refers to people who were not born Jewish. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### uncircumcised (ULT)

### uncircumcised (UST)

Non-Jewish people were not circumcised as babies and thus the Jews considered them people who do not follow any of God's laws. Alternate translation: "uncircumcised pagans" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### circumcised (ULT)

### the circumcised (UST)

This was another term for Jewish people because all male infants were **circumcised**. Alternate translation: "circumcised people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### by those who are called (ULT)

### They call themselves (UST)

You can translate this with an active form. Alternate translation: "by what people call" or "by those whom people call" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Therefore, remember that once you were **Gentiles** in **the flesh**, who are called "**uncircumcised**" by those who are called "**circumcised**" in **the flesh**, performed by human hands.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> So remember that previously you **non-Jewish people according to who your ancestors were did not belong to God's people**. The Jews insulted you by calling you "the **uncircumcised**." They call themselves "**the circumcised**." By this they mean that they, not you, are God's people, although circumcision is something that humans do **that only changes the body**, not something that God does that changes the spirit.

**in...those who are called “circumcised...the flesh, performed by human hands (ULT)**

**according to who your ancestors were...They call themselves...the circumcised.” By this they mean that they, not you, are God’s people, although circumcision is something that humans do...that only changes the body (UST)**

This could mean: (1) This refers to Jews, who are circumcised by humans. (2) This refers to Jews, who circumcise the physical body.

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Gentiles
- the flesh
- the flesh
- uncircumcised
- circumcised

### **Translation Words - UST**

- non-Jewish people...did not belong to God’s people
- according to who your ancestors were
- that only changes the body
- uncircumcised
- the circumcised

## Ephesians 2:12

### For (ULT)

### Remember that (UST)

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that they were not part of the Jews, who were circumcised. The result is that the Gentile Ephesians were separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### apart from Christ (ULT)

### separated from the Messiah (UST)

“unbelievers”

### strangers to the covenants of the promise (ULT)

### You did not share in the things that God promised in his agreements with them (UST)

Paul speaks to the Gentile believers as if they had been foreigners, kept out of the land of God’s **covenants** and **promise**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- at...time
- Christ
- community
- of Israel
- to...covenants
- of...promise
- hope
- world

### Translation Words - UST

- at...time
- the Messiah
- people
- Israel
- the things that God promised
- in his agreements with them
- You did not confidently expect that God would save you
- in this world

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For at that [time](#) you were apart from [Christ](#), excluded from the [community of Israel](#), and strangers to the [covenants](#) of the [promise](#), having no [hope](#) and without God in the [world](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Remember that, at that [time](#), you were separated from [the Messiah](#). You were foreigners to the [people](#) of [Israel](#). You did not share in [the things that God promised in his agreements with them](#). [You did not confidently expect that God would save you](#). No, you were living [in this world](#) completely without God.

## Ephesians 2:13

### But (ULT)

### But (UST)

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The current condition of the Ephesian Gentile believers, after they believed in Christ, is that they are near to God. That is in contrast to their previous condition, before they believed in Christ, of being separated from God. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

### you who once were far away have been brought near by the blood of Christ (ULT)

Not belonging to God due to sin is spoken of as being far away from God. Belonging to God because of the blood of Christ is spoken of as being brought near to God. Alternate translation: "you who once did not belong to God now belong to God because of the blood of Christ" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### by the blood of Christ (ULT)

### This was possible because the Messiah died on the cross for you (UST)

Here the **blood of Christ** is a metonym for his death. Alternate translation: "by Christ's death" or "when Christ died for us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [blood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [because you have trusted in Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [died on the cross for you](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But now [in Christ Jesus](#) you who once were far away have been brought near by the [blood of Christ](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> But now, [because you have trusted in Jesus the Messiah](#), God has brought you into his family, even though before that you did not know him. This was possible because the [Messiah died on the cross for you](#).

## Ephesians 2:14

### For (ULT)

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ himself joined them to the Jewish believers. The result is that the Ephesian Gentile believers were brought near to God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### himself...he...is our peace (ULT)

### It is the Messiah who...has made it possible for Jews and non-Jews to live peacefully with each other (UST)

"Jesus gives us his peace"

### our peace (ULT)

### Jews and non-Jews to live peacefully with each other (UST)

The word **our** refers to Paul and his readers and so, it is inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### who has made the two one (ULT)

### He made the two separate groups into one group (UST)

"who made the Jews and Gentiles one"

### in his flesh (ULT)

### when he died for all of us (UST)

The phrase **his flesh**, his physical body, is a metonym for his body dying. Alternate translation: "by the death of his body on the cross" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the middle wall of partition...the hostility (ULT)

### The two groups hated each other...every reason for hating each other (UST)

The **hostility** between the Jews and Gentiles is compared to a **wall**. Alternate translation: "the hostility that was like a wall that separated them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [peace](#)
- [flesh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to live peacefully with each other](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For he himself is our [peace](#), who has made the two one and destroyed in his [flesh](#) the middle wall of partition, the hostility.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> It is the Messiah who has made it possible for Jews and non-Jews [to live peacefully with each other](#). He made the two separate groups into one group. The two groups hated each other, but he took away every reason for hating each other when he [died for all of us](#).

- died for all of us

## Ephesians 2:15

**He abolished the law of commandments in regulations (ULT)**

**He made it no longer necessary for us to obey the commandments and requirements of the Jewish law for him to accept us (UST)**

Jesus' blood satisfies the law of Moses so that both the Jews and Gentiles can live at peace in God. Alternate translation: "He took away the requirements in the law of Moses"

**so that (ULT)**

**He did this in order to (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ in abolishing the law was to join the Jews and the Gentiles together into one group. (See: [Connect - Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**one new man (ULT)**

**one new people (UST)**

Paul talks about the unity of Jews and Gentiles as if they had become **one** person. Alternate translation: "a single new people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in himself (ULT)**

**because of their relationship to him (UST)**

It is being joined to Christ that makes reconciliation possible between Jews and Gentiles. Paul describes this relationship as though Christ surrounded all of us. Alternate translation: "because he made it possible" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- of commandments
- regulations
- peace

### Translation Words - UST

- the commandments
- and requirements of
- Jewish law
- who would live peacefully together

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> He abolished the law of commandments in regulations so that he might make the two into one new man in himself, making peace,

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> He made it no longer necessary for us to obey the commandments and requirements of the Jewish law for him to accept us. He did this in order to make the Jews and the non-Jews into one new people who would live peacefully together because of their relationship to him.

## Ephesians 2:16

### so that he might reconcile both (ULT) reconcile both groups (UST)

“so that Christ might bring the Jews and the Gentiles together in peace”

### as one body (ULT) as one group (UST)

The church is often pictured as the **body** of Christ, who is its head. Here it is comprised of both Jews and Gentiles. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### through the cross (ULT) by dying on the cross for all of them (UST)

Here the **cross** here represents Christ’s death on the cross. Alternate translation: “by means of Christ’s death on the cross” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### putting to death the hostility (ULT) Jesus made it possible for them to stop being enemies to each other and to God (UST)

Stopping their **hostility** is spoken of as if he killed their hostility. By dying on the cross, Jesus eliminated the reason for Jews and Gentiles to be hostile toward each other. Neither are now required to live according to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: “stopping them from hating one another” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> and [so that he might reconcile](#) both [to God](#) as one [body](#) through the [cross](#), putting to death the hostility in it.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> He did this in order to [reconcile](#) both groups to [God](#) as one [group](#) by [dying on the cross for all of them](#). By dying for them, Jesus made it possible for them to stop being enemies to each other and to God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [so that he might reconcile](#)
- [to God](#)
- [body](#)
- [cross](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [reconcile](#)
- [God](#)
- [group](#)
- [dying on the cross for all of them](#)



## Ephesians 2:17

### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the Ephesians that Gentile believers are also now just as much a part of God's people as are Jewish believers. The Jewish apostles and prophets are theirs, as is Christ, and they all form a temple for God in the Spirit.

**and proclaimed peace (ULT)**  
**and announced the good news that we can be**  
**at peace with God; he announced (UST)**

"and announced the gospel of peace" or "declaring the gospel of peace"

**to you who were far away (ULT)**  
**to you non-Jews, who did not know about God (UST)**

Paul pictures the Gentiles (non-Jews), who were not part of God's people, as though they were physically distant from God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to those who were near (ULT)**  
**to us Jews, who did know about God (UST)**

Paul pictures the Jews, who were God's people by birth, as though they were physically close to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and proclaimed](#)
- [peace](#)
- [peace](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and announced the good news...he announced](#)
- [that we can be at peace with God](#)
- [this](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And he came [and proclaimed peace](#) to you who were far away and [peace](#) to those who were near,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Jesus came [and announced the good news that we can be at peace with God](#); [he announced this](#) to you non-Jews, who did not know about God, and to us Jews, who did know about God.

## Ephesians 2:18

**for through him we both have access (ULT)**  
**Because of what Jesus did for us, both Jews**  
**and non-Jews now can come (UST)**

Here, **we both** refers to Paul, the believing Jews, and the believing non-Jews. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**for (ULT)**  
**Because of (UST)**

The connecting word **for** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that he himself is the one who enabled both Jew and Gentile to come to the Father. The result is that Christ proclaimed peace to both the Jews and the Gentiles. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**in one Spirit (ULT)**  
**with the help of God's Spirit (UST)**

All believers, both Jewish and Gentile, are enabled to enter into the presence of God the Father by the same Holy **Spirit**. Alternate translation: "by means of the same Spirit"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- God the Father
- God's Spirit

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> for through him we both have access in one Spirit to the Father.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Because of what Jesus did for us, both Jews and non-Jews now can come to God the Father with the help of God's Spirit.

## Ephesians 2:19

### So then (ULT)

### Therefore now (UST)

The connecting phrase **So then** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ gave them access to God through the Spirit. The result is that the Ephesian believers are no longer separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### strangers and foreigners (ULT)

### left out of God's people (UST)

The words **strangers** and **foreigners** have very similar meanings and may be combined. Alternate translation: "people who had no relationship to God" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Instead (ULT)

### but instead (UST)

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. The previous separation of the Ephesians from God is in contrast to their current status as citizens of the kingdom of God and members of his household. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### you are fellow citizens with the saints and members of the household of God (ULT)

### you are fellow members with those whom God has set apart for himself, and you belong to God's family (UST)

Paul is again speaking of the spiritual condition of Gentiles after they become believers as he would speak about foreigners becoming citizens of a different nation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> So then, you are no longer strangers and foreigners. Instead, you are [fellow citizens with the saints and members of the household of God](#).

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Therefore now you non-Jews are no longer left out of God's people, but instead you are [fellow members with those whom God has set apart for himself](#), and [you belong to God's family](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fellow citizens with](#)
- [saints](#)
- [members of the household](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow members with](#)
- [whom God has set apart for himself](#)
- [you belong to...family](#)
- [God's](#)

## Ephesians 2:20

**You have been built on the foundation (ULT)  
You are like stones that God has put together  
into a building...are like the foundation stones  
of that building. You depend on what they  
have taught, just as building stones depend  
on the foundation stones below them to form  
a wall that is upright and strong (UST)**

Paul speaks of God's people as if they were a building. Christ is the cornerstone, the apostles are the **foundation**, and the believers are the structure. Alternate translation: "you depend on the teaching" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You have been built (ULT)  
You are like stones that God has put together  
into a building...You...just as building stones...  
to form a wall that is upright and strong (UST)**

You can state this in the active tense. Alternate translation: "God has built you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> You have been built on the [foundation](#) of the [apostles](#) and [prophets](#), [Christ Jesus](#) himself being the [cornerstone](#),

### UST

<sup>20</sup> You are like stones that God has put together into a building, and the [apostles](#) and [prophets are like the foundation stones of that building](#). You depend on [what they have taught](#), just as building stones depend on [the foundation stones below them](#) to form a wall that is upright and strong. [The Messiah Jesus](#) himself is [like the cornerstone, which is the most important stone of the building](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [foundation](#)
- [of...apostles](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the cornerstone](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [are like the foundation stones of that building...what they have taught...the foundation stones below them](#)
- [The Messiah](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [like the cornerstone, which is the most important stone of the building](#)

## Ephesians 2:21

**the whole building, being fit together, grows into a holy temple (ULT)**

**the building. Just as a builder joins stones together to make a holy temple, Jesus is assembling his family of believers to be one holy group (UST)**

Paul continues to speak of Christ's family as if it were a **building**. In the same way that a builder fits stones together while building, so Christ is fitting us together. Alternate translation: "all of us, as we grow together, become a holy group that worships God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in whom...in the Lord (ULT)**

**Jesus determines where each person belongs, just as the cornerstone determines where each stone fits in...which serves the Lord (UST)**

"In Christ ... in the Lord Jesus" These metaphors express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> in whom the whole building, being fit together, grows into a [holy temple in the Lord](#),

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Jesus determines where each person belongs, just as the cornerstone determines where each stone fits in the building. Just as a builder joins stones together to make a [holy temple](#), Jesus is assembling his family of believers to be one [holy group which serves the Lord](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#)
- [a...temple](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [holy...holy](#)
- [a...temple...one...group](#)
- [which serves the Lord](#)
- [which serves the Lord](#)

## Ephesians 2:22

**in whom (ULT)**

**Because you belong to Jesus (UST)**

You can translate this as “in Christ,” which is a metaphor that expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you also are being built together into a dwelling place for God in the Spirit (ULT)**  
**he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews, into one family that is like a building in which God lives by means of his Spirit (UST)**

This describes how believers are being put together to become a **place** where **God** will permanently live through the power of the Holy **Spirit**. Alternate translation: “you also are being joined to this group where God lives by his Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you also are being built together (ULT)**

**he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews (UST)**

You can state this as active. Alternate translation: “God is also building you together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for God](#)
- [the Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [his Spirit](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> in whom you also are being built together into a dwelling place [for God](#) in [the Spirit](#).

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Because you belong to Jesus, he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews, into one family that is like a building in which [God](#) lives by means of [his Spirit](#).

## **Ephesians 3**

### **Ephesians 3 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **“I pray”**

Paul structures part of this chapter as a prayer to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is both praying for and instructing the church in Ephesus.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Mystery**

Paul refers to the church as a “mystery.” The role of the church in the plans of God was once not known. But God has now revealed it. Part of this mystery involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God.

# Ephesians 3:1

## Connecting Statement:

To make clear the hidden truth about the church to believers, Paul refers back to the oneness of Jews and Gentiles and how believers from both groups form part of the one group that worships God, like the stones that form one temple.

## For this reason (ULT) Because God is working out this plan for you (UST)

The connecting phrase **For this reason** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is what Paul talked about in Chapter 2, that Christ showed his grace by removing the division between Jews and Gentiles and making them into one group. The result is that Paul prays for the Gentiles. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## For this reason (ULT) Because God is working out this plan for you (UST)

You may need to make explicit what the reason is. Alternate translation: “because of God’s grace to you” You may also need to make explicit here what the result is, as in the UST, because Paul does not state the result until 3:14, that he prays for them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the prisoner of Christ Jesus (ULT) even as I am in prison because I serve the Messiah Jesus (UST)

“the one who is in prison because I serve Christ Jesus”

## Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- prisoner
- of Christ
- Jesus
- Gentiles

## Translation Words - UST

- non-Jews
- Paul
- even as I am in prison because I serve
- Messiah
- Jesus

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> For this reason I, Paul, the prisoner of Christ Jesus on behalf of you Gentiles,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Because God is working out this plan for you non-Jews, I, Paul, pray to the Father for you, even as I am in prison because I serve the Messiah Jesus for your sake.



## Ephesians 3:2

### the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you

Here, **grace** could mean: (1) This refers to the gift of the gospel that Paul is bringing to the Gentiles, and you could translate, “the responsibility that God gave me to bring his grace to you.” (2) This refers to the gift to Paul of being the steward of the gospel for the Gentiles, and you could translate that as “the responsibility that God graciously gave me for your benefit.”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [stewardship](#)
- [of...grace](#)
- [of God](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [the task of communicating...his plan](#)
- [to be extremely kind](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> if indeed you have heard of the [stewardship](#) of the [grace of God](#) that was given to me for you,

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> I assume that people have told you about me, that [God](#) has given me [the task of communicating](#) to you non-Jews [his plan to be extremely kind](#) to you.

## Ephesians 3:3

**according to the revelation made known to me (ULT)**

**God told me...by revealing it to me directly (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "according to what God revealed to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**about which I already wrote in brief (ULT)**  
**just as I wrote to you before briefly (UST)**

Paul refers here to another letter that he had written to these people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the revelation](#)
- [made known](#)
- [mystery](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God told](#)
- [this message that people did not understand before](#)
- [revealing it...directly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> according to [the revelation made known](#) to me, the [mystery](#) about which I already wrote in brief.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> [God told](#) me [this message that people did not understand before](#) by [revealing it](#) to me [directly](#), just as I wrote to you before briefly.

## Ephesians 3:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- to understand
- insight
- mystery
- of Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- perceive
- that...clearly understand
- things that God had not previously revealed
- Messiah

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Concerning that, when you read it, you will be able to understand my insight into the mystery of Christ,

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> As you read that, you can perceive that I clearly understand things that God had not previously revealed about the Messiah.

## Ephesians 3:5

**which in other generations was not made known to the sons of men (ULT)**

**Formerly, God did not fully reveal this message to people...it (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not make these things known to people in the past" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**as it now has been revealed...by the Spirit (ULT)**

**but now...has revealed...his Spirit (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "but now the Spirit has revealed it" or "but now the Spirit has made it known" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> which in other [generations](#) was not [made known](#) to the [sons](#) of men [as it](#) now [has been revealed](#) by [the Spirit](#) to his [holy apostles](#) and [prophets](#)—

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Formerly](#), [God did](#) not [fully reveal](#) this message [to people](#), [but now his Spirit](#) [has revealed](#) it to his [holy apostles](#) and [prophets](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [generations](#)
- [was...made known](#)
- [to...sons](#)
- [as](#)
- [it...has been revealed](#)
- [the Spirit](#)
- [holy](#)
- [to...apostles](#)
- [prophets](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Formerly](#)
- [God did...fully reveal](#)
- [to people](#)
- [but now](#)
- [his Spirit](#)
- [has revealed](#)
- [holy](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [prophets](#)

## Ephesians 3:6

**that the Gentiles are fellow heirs...through the gospel (ULT)**

**The message is this: the non-Jews now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God...as a result of believing the good news (UST)**

This is the hidden truth that Paul began to explain in the previous verse. The **Gentiles** who receive Christ also receive everything that the Jewish believers receive from God.

**fellow members of the body (ULT)**  
**belong to the same group of God's people (UST)**

The church is often referred to as the **body** of Christ.

**in Christ Jesus (ULT)**  
**they are joined to the Messiah Jesus (UST)**

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

**through the gospel (ULT)**  
**as a result of believing the good news (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Because of the **gospel**, the Gentiles are fellow sharers in the promise. (2) Because of the **gospel**, the Gentiles are fellow heirs and members of the body and fellow sharers in the promise.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gentiles
- fellow heirs
- fellow members of the body
- of...promise
- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus
- gospel

### Translation Words - UST

- non-Jews
- now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God
- belong to the same group of God's people

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> that the **Gentiles** are **fellow heirs** and **fellow members of the body**, and fellow partakers of the **promise in Christ Jesus** through the **gospel**,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> The message is this: the **non-Jews now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God** and **belong to the same group of God's people** and will share **all the things God has promised to his people because they are joined to the Messiah Jesus** as a result of believing the **good news**.

- all the things God has promised to his people because
- they are joined to the Messiah Jesus
- the Messiah
- Jesus
- good news

## Ephesians 3:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- of...grace
- of God
- of...power

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- was very kind to me...even though I am not worthy of it
- and gave me this work to do
- powerfully

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> for which I became a servant by the gift of the grace of God that was given to me through the working of his power.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> I now serve God by telling people this good news. God was very kind to me and gave me this work to do even though I am not worthy of it, and he enables me to do it by powerfully working in me.

## Ephesians 3:8

### unsearchable (ULT)

### unending (UST)

Paul speaks of everything that Christ offers as something so physically vast that it cannot be fully explored. Alternate Translation: “unable to be completely known” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### riches of Christ (ULT)

### spiritual blessings that the Messiah has for us (UST)

Paul speaks of the truth about **Christ** and the blessings he brings as if they were material wealth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...the saints
- grace
- to preach
- to...Gentiles
- of Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- of God's people
- kindly...this gift
- he appointed me to proclaim...the good news about
- to the non-Jews
- that the Messiah has for us

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> To me—the least of all [the saints](#)—this [grace](#) was given, [to preach](#) to the [Gentiles](#) the unsearchable riches [of Christ](#),

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Although I am the least worthy of all [of God's people](#), God [kindly](#) gave me this gift: [he appointed me to proclaim to the non-Jews the good news about the unending spiritual blessings that the Messiah has for us](#)



## Ephesians 3:9

### of the mystery that was hidden from the ages in God who created all things (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “of God, who created all things, kept this plan hidden for long ages in the past” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [administration](#)
- [of...mystery](#)
- [ages](#)
- [God](#)
- [who created](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God’s plan](#)
- [This plan is something](#)
- [God](#)
- [created](#)
- [long ago](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> and to reveal for everyone what is the [administration](#) of the [mystery](#) that was hidden from the [ages](#) in [God who created](#) all things,

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> and to enable everyone to understand what [God’s plan](#) is. [This plan is something](#) that [God](#), who [created](#) everything, has kept hidden from [long ago](#).

## Ephesians 3:10

**so that (ULT)**

**hid this plan so that (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God revealing the mystery of the church to Paul is to enable the rulers in the heavenly places to see the wisdom of God. (See: [Connect - Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**might be made known...to the rulers and to the authorities in the heavenly places...the multifaceted wisdom of God (ULT)**  
**as he reveals it...he also reveals...to the spiritual authorities at the highest levels... God...how profoundly wise he is (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God may make his great wisdom known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to the rulers and to the authorities (ULT)**

**to the spiritual authorities (UST)**

These words share similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize that every spiritual being will know God's wisdom. If your language does not have two words for this, you can use one. (See: [Doublet](#))

**in the heavenly places (ULT)**

**at the highest levels (UST)**

The phrase **heavenly places** refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in [Ephesians 1:3](#). Alternate translation: "in the supernatural world"

**the multifaceted wisdom of God (ULT)**

**God...how profoundly wise he is (UST)**

Paul talks of God's **wisdom** as though it were an object with many surfaces. Alternate translation: "the complex wisdom of God" or "how extremely wise God is" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [of God](#)
- [might be made known](#)
- [to...rulers](#)
- [to...authorities](#)
- [heavenly places](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> so that now through the [church](#) the multifaceted [wisdom of God might be made known](#) to the [rulers](#) and to the [authorities](#) in the [heavenly places](#),

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [God](#) hid this plan so that [as he reveals it](#) now by making it happen in [those who believe](#), [he also reveals to the spiritual authorities](#) at the [highest levels](#) how profoundly [wise he is](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- God...he is
- as he reveals it...he also reveals
- those who believe
- to the spiritual authorities
- to the spiritual authorities
- the highest levels
- wise

## Ephesians 3:11

**according to the eternal purpose (ULT)**  
**This is the plan that God has always had (UST)**

“in keeping with the eternal plan” or “consistent with the eternal plan”

### Translation Words - ULT

- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus
- Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- through the work of the Messiah Jesus
- Messiah
- Jesus
- Lord

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> according to the eternal purpose that he accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord,

### UST

<sup>11</sup> This is the plan that God has always had, and it is what he accomplished through the work of the Messiah Jesus, our Lord.

## Ephesians 3:12

### Connecting Statement:

In the next section, Paul praises God in his sufferings and prays for these Ephesian believers.

**we have boldness (ULT)**  
**we can...freely (UST)**

“we are without fear” or “we have courage”

**boldness and access (ULT)**  
**come to God freely and (UST)**

These two words work together to express one idea: “bold access” or “boldness to enter” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**access with confidence (ULT)**  
**come to God...confidently (UST)**

It may be helpful to state explicitly that this **access** is into God’s presence. Alternate translation: “access into God’s presence with confidence” or “freedom to enter into God’s presence with confidence” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**confidence (ULT)**  
**confidently (UST)**

“certainty” or “assurance”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [boldness](#)
- [confidence](#)
- [faith](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [freely](#)
- [confidently](#)
- [when we trust...he joins us to himself](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> in whom we have [boldness](#) and access with [confidence](#) through [faith](#) in him.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> So now, because of what Jesus has done, we can come to God [freely](#) and [confidently](#) because, [when we trust](#) in Jesus, [he joins us to himself](#).

## Ephesians 3:13

### Therefore (ULT)

### So (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the believers have access to Christ with confidence. The result is that the believers will not be discouraged. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**for you, which is your glory (ULT)**  
**on your behalf, because they produce a**  
**glorious result for you (UST)**

Here, **your glory** is a metonym for the salvation and eternal life that the Ephesians will have because of Paul's work of telling them about Christ, which resulted in his suffering in prison. You can state this as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "for you. They bring you a wonderful benefit" or "for you. They result in your salvation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sufferings](#)
- [your](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the things that...am suffering here in prison](#)
- [a glorious result](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Therefore, I ask you not to be discouraged by my [sufferings](#) for you, which is [your](#) glory.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> So please do not be discouraged by [the things that I am suffering here in prison](#) on your behalf, because they produce [a glorious result](#) for you.

## Ephesians 3:14

### For this reason (ULT)

### Because God has done all this for you (UST)

The connecting phrase **For this reason** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Paul's sufferings have caused glory for the believers. The result is that Paul prays to the Father. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### For this reason (ULT)

### Because God has done all this for you (UST)

You may need to make explicit what the reason is. Alternate translation: "because God has done all this for you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### I bend my knees to the Father (ULT)

### I kneel and pray to God our Father (UST)

Bent **knees** are a picture of the whole person in an attitude of prayer. Alternate translation: "I bow down in prayer to the Father" or "I humbly pray to the Father" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I bend](#)
- [Father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [kneel and pray](#)
- [God our Father](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For this reason [I bend](#) my knees to the [Father](#),

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Because God has done all this for you, I [kneel and pray](#) to [God our Father](#).

## Ephesians 3:15

**from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named (ULT)**

**He is the original father, who gave the pattern for every family in heaven and on the earth to follow (UST)**

The act of naming here probably also represents the act of creating.  
Alternate translation: "who created and named every family in heaven and on earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> from whom every [family](#) in [heaven](#) and on [earth](#) is named,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> He is the original father, who gave the pattern for every [family](#) in [heaven](#) and on [the earth](#) to follow.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [family](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [earth](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [family](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [the earth](#)



## Ephesians 3:16

**so that (ULT)**

**I pray that (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Paul's prayer is that the Ephesian believers would be strengthened by God in their faith and love. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power (ULT)**

**God will give you...to strengthen...in proportion to how abundantly great he is (UST)**

"God, because he is so great and powerful, would allow you to become strong with his power"

**he would grant (ULT)**

**God will give (UST)**

"he would give"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...glory
- to be strengthened
- with power
- Spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- Spirit
- to strengthen
- to strengthen
- great

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> so that he would grant you, according to the riches of his [glory](#), to [be strengthened with power](#) through his [Spirit](#) in the inner man,

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> I pray that God will give you his [Spirit to strengthen](#) your spirit in proportion to how abundantly [great](#) he is.

## Ephesians 3:17

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues the prayer he began in [Ephesians 3:14](#).

**that Christ may live in your hearts through faith, being rooted and grounded in love**

This is the second item for which Paul prays that God will “grant” the Ephesians “according to the riches of his glory.” The first is that they would “be strengthened” ([Ephesians 3:16](#)).

**that Christ may live in your hearts through faith (ULT)**

**I pray that the Messiah may stay as close to you as your own hearts because you trust in him (UST)**

Here, **hearts** represent a person’s inner being, and **through** expresses the means by which Christ lives within the believer. Christ lives in the hearts of believers because God graciously allows them to have faith. Alternate translation: “that Christ may live within you because you trust in him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**being rooted and grounded in love (ULT)**  
**and that everything that you do and say will be a result of God’s love for you and your love for him and others (UST)**

Paul speaks of their faith as if it were a tree that has deep roots or a house built on a solid foundation. Alternate translation: “you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building built on stone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [faith](#)
- [grounded](#)
- [love](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [you trust in him](#)
- [and that everything that you do and say will be](#)
- [God’s love for you and your love for him and others](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> that [Christ](#) may live in your [hearts](#) through [faith](#), being rooted and [grounded](#) in [love](#),

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> I pray that the [Messiah](#) may stay as close to you as your own [hearts](#) because [you trust in him](#), and that [everything that you do and say will be](#) a result of [God’s love for you and your love for him and others](#)

## Ephesians 3:18

### so that (ULT)

### so that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ would live in their hearts. The result is that the Ephesian believers would fully know the love of God and be filled with God's fullness. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### to comprehend (ULT)

### to understand (UST)

This is the third item for which Paul bends his knees and prays; the first is that God will grant that they be strengthened ([Ephesians 3:16](#)) and the second is that Christ may live in their hearts through faith ([Ephesians 3:17](#)).

### all the saints (ULT)

### all of God's people (UST)

"all the believers in Christ"

### the width and length and height and depth (ULT)

### very much the Messiah loves us (UST)

In this metaphor Paul pictures something that is not physical or measurable as something that is physical but stretches out in all directions and, thus, is very large. This could mean: (1) These words describe the intensity of Christ's love for us. Alternate translation: "how very much Christ loves us" (2) These words describe the greatness of God's wisdom. Alternate translation: "how very wise God is" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the width and length and height and depth (ULT)

### very much the Messiah loves us (UST)

It may be necessary to state explicitly what these words refer to. If so, you can combine this with the phrase from the next verse and say: "the width and length and height and depth of, and truly know the love of Christ" or "the width and length and height and depth of the love of Christ, and truly know it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- you may be fully able
- saints

## Translation Words - UST

- you may be fully able
- God's people

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> so that you may be fully able to comprehend, along with all the saints, what is the width and length and height and depth,

### UST

<sup>18</sup> so that you may be fully able to understand, along with all of God's people, how very much the Messiah loves us.

## Ephesians 3:19

**and to know the...love of Christ (ULT)**  
**I pray that you will come to know how much...**  
**even though he loves us so much that we**  
**cannot understand it...the Messiah loves us**  
**(UST)**

This continues the idea from the previous verse. They both refer to knowing the greatness of the love of Christ. Alternate translation: "that you can know how great Christ's love for us is"

**so that you may be filled with all the fullness**  
**of God (ULT)**  
**I pray that God will give you a full measure of**  
**everything that he is (UST)**

This is the fourth item for which Paul bends his knees and prays ([Ephesians 3:14](#)). The first is that they would "be strengthened" ([Ephesians 3:16](#)), the second is that "Christ would live in their hearts through faith" ([Ephesians 3:17](#)), and the third is that they "could comprehend Christ's love" ([Ephesians 3:18](#)).

**so that you may be filled with all the fullness of God (ULT)**  
**I pray that God will give you a full measure of everything that he is (UST)**

In this metaphor Paul pictures the Ephesian believers as containers into which **God** can pour himself. Alternate translation: "so God can give you everything that he has to give you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so that you may be filled (ULT)**  
**I pray that...will give you a full measure of (UST)**

You can state this actively. Alternate translation: "so that God can fill you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**with all the fullness of God (ULT)**  
**God...will give you a full measure of...everything that he is (UST)**

The word **fullness** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "with everything that God is full of" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**so that (ULT)**  
**I pray that (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the Ephesian believers would know the love of Christ. The result is that they would be filled with the fullness of God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> and to know the love of Christ, which goes beyond knowledge so that you may be filled with all the fullness of God.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> I pray that you will come to know how much the Messiah loves us, even though he loves us so much that we cannot understand it. I pray that God will give you a full measure of everything that he is.

## Translation Words - ULT

- to know
- knowledge
- love
- of Christ
- of God

## Translation Words - UST

- I pray that you will come to know how much
- even though he loves us so much that we cannot understand it
- Messiah
- loves us
- God

## Ephesians 3:20

### General Information:

The words “we” and “us” in this book continue to include Paul and all believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul concludes his prayer with a blessing.

### And to him (ULT)

“Now to God, who”

**to do exceedingly abundantly...that we ask or think (ULT)**

**to do much more...that we ask him to do, or even that we think that he can do (UST)**

“to do much more than all that we ask or think” or “to do things that are much greater than anything that we ask him for or think about”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [think](#)
- [power](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [even that we think that he can do](#)
- [how powerfully](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And to him who is able to do exceedingly abundantly above all that we ask or [think](#), according to the [power](#) that is working in us,

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Praise God, who is able to do much more than anything that we ask him to do, or [even that we think that he can do](#), because of [how powerfully](#) he works within us!

## Ephesians 3:21

**to him be the glory in the church (ULT)**  
**May all believers praise him for how great he is...for the awesome work that he has done...**  
**May they praise him (UST)**

The word **glory** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “may God’s people glorify him” or “may God’s people praise him for how great he is” See the UST (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- glory
- church
- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus
- generations
- Amen

### Translation Words - UST

- all believers
- May...praise...for how great he is...for the awesome work that he has done...May they praise
- through the Messiah Jesus
- the Messiah
- Jesus
- generations
- May it be so

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> to him be the [glory](#) in the [church](#) and [in Christ Jesus](#) to all [generations](#) forever and ever. [Amen](#).

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> May [all believers](#) praise him for how great he is and for the awesome work that he has done through the [Messiah Jesus](#)! May they praise him throughout all [generations](#) forever! [May it be so](#).

## **Ephesians 4**

### **Ephesians 4 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 8, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Spiritual gifts**

Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians after they come to believe in Jesus. These spiritual gifts were foundational to developing the church. Paul lists here only some of the spiritual gifts. (See: [faith](#))

##### **Unity**

Paul considers it very important that the church is united. This is a major theme of this chapter.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **Old man and new man**

The term “old man” probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The “new man” is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ.



## Ephesians 4:1

### Connecting Statement:

Because of what Paul has been writing to the Ephesians, he tells them how they should live their lives as believers and again emphasizes that believers are to agree with each other.

### Therefore (ULT)

### Because of all this (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God will be glorified in the church for all generations. The result is that believers should walk in a way that is worthy of the Lord. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### the prisoner for the Lord (ULT)

### as someone who is in prison because...serve the Lord Jesus (UST)

“someone who is in prison because he serves the Lord”

### to walk worthily of the calling (ULT)

### to live in a way that honors Jesus...to live for him (UST)

The phrase **to walk** is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of the calling by which you were called (ULT)

### who called you to live for him (UST)

Here, **the calling** refers to the fact that God chose them to be his people. Alternate translation: “because God chose you to be his people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- prisoner
- for the Lord
- the Lord
- urge
- to walk
- worthily
- of...calling
- you were called

### Translation Words - UST

- as someone who is in prison
- because...serve the Lord Jesus
- the Lord Jesus

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore I, the prisoner for the Lord, urge you to walk worthily of the calling by which you were called,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Because of all this, as someone who is in prison because I serve the Lord Jesus, I appeal to you to live in a way that honors Jesus, who called you to live for him.

- I appeal to
- to live
- in a way that honors Jesus
- to live for him
- who called you

## Ephesians 4:2

### with all humility and gentleness (ULT)

### Always be humble and gentle (UST)

The words **humility**, **gentleness**, and **patience** are abstract nouns.  
Alternate Translation: "to learn to be humble, gentle, and patient"  
(See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [humility](#)
- [patience](#)
- [putting up with](#)
- [love](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [be humble](#)
- [Be patient with each other](#)
- [enduring the bothersome things that others do](#)
- [you love](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> with all [humility](#) and gentleness, with [patience](#), [putting up with](#) one another in [love](#),

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Always [be humble](#) and gentle. [Be patient with each other](#), [enduring the bothersome things that others do](#) because [you love](#) each other.

## Ephesians 4:3

**to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace (ULT)**

**Since God's Spirit has united you...to remain united with one another. Bind yourselves together by acting peacefully toward each other (UST)**

Here Paul speaks of **peace** as if it were a **bond** that ties people together. This is a metaphor for being united with other people by living peacefully with them. Alternate translation: "to live peacefully with one another and remain united as the Spirit made possible" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> doing your best to keep the unity of the [Spirit](#) in the [bond of peace](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Since God's Spirit](#) has united you, do everything that you can to remain united with one another. [Bind yourselves together by acting peacefully toward each other](#).

**to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace (ULT)**

**Since God's Spirit has united you...to remain united with one another. Bind yourselves together by acting peacefully toward each other (UST)**

The words **unity** and **peace** are abstract nouns. Alternate translation: "to live peacefully with one another and remain united as the Spirit made possible" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...Spirit](#)
- [bond](#)
- [of peace](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Since God's Spirit](#)
- [Bind yourselves together](#)
- [by acting peacefully toward each other](#)

## Ephesians 4:4

**There is one body (ULT)**

**God only has one family of believers (UST)**

The church is often referred to as the **body** of Christ.

**There is one...Spirit (ULT)**

**God only has one family of believers...one**

**Holy Spirit (UST)**

“only one Holy Spirit”

**you were called in one certain hope of your  
calling (ULT)**

**he...called all of you to receive the one and only thing that people can hope  
for, that belongs to you whom God has called (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God called you to have one confident hope in your calling” or “there is one thing that God also chose you to be confident in and expect him to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [just as](#)
- [you were called](#)
- [of...calling](#)
- [certain hope](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God only has one family of believers](#)
- [one Holy Spirit](#)
- [just as](#)
- [he...called all of you](#)
- [whom God has called](#)
- [thing that people can hope for](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> There is one [body](#) and one [Spirit](#), just as also [you were called](#) in one [certain hope](#) of your [calling](#),

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> God only has one family of believers and one Holy Spirit, just as he also called all of you to receive the one and only thing that people can hope for, that belongs to you whom God has called.

## Ephesians 4:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- faith
- baptism

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord, Jesus the Messiah
- way to believe in him
- and they baptized us to show that we belong to him

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> one Lord, one faith, one baptism,

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> There is only one Lord, Jesus the Messiah, only one way to believe in him, and they baptized us to show that we belong to him alone.

## Ephesians 4:6

**Father of all...of all...over...of all...through...in all (ULT)**

**who is the Father...of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew...of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew...rules over...of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew...works through...is in all of us (UST)**

The word **all** here means “everything.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God and Father

### Translation Words - UST

- God, who is the Father

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> one God and Father of all, who is over all and through all and in all.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> There is one God, who is the Father of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew. He rules over all of us, works through all of us, and is in all of us.

# Ephesians 4:7

## General Information:

The quote here is from a song that King David wrote.

## Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds believers of the gifts that Christ gives believers to use in the church, which is the whole body of believers.

**to...one...each...of us grace has been given (ULT)**

**one...To each...of us God has given spiritual gifts (UST)**

You can state this using an active form. Alternate translation: “God has given grace to each one of us” or “God gave a gift to each believer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to...one...each...of us grace has been given (ULT)**

**one...To each...of us God has given spiritual gifts (UST)**

The word **grace** is an abstract noun that refers here to a gift from God. Alternate translation: “God has given a gift to each believer” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [of...gift](#)
- [of Christ](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [spiritual gifts](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [them](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And to each one of us [grace](#) has been given according to the measure of the [gift of Christ](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> To each one of us God has given [spiritual gifts](#) in just the way that the [Messiah](#) has decided that we should have [them](#).



## Ephesians 4:8

### Therefore (ULT) That is why (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that every believer has been given a spiritual gift. The result is that the Scripture says Jesus gave gifts to men. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### When he ascended to the heights (ULT) As he went up to the high place (UST)

“When Christ went up into heaven”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the heights](#)
- [gifts](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the high place](#)
- [gifts](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Therefore it says: “When he ascended to [the heights](#), he led captives into captivity, and he gave [gifts](#) to men.”

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> That is why the scripture says, As he went up to [the high place](#), he brought with him many people whom he had captured, and gave [gifts](#) to his people.

## Ephesians 4:9

**He ascended (ULT)**  
**he went up (UST)**

“Christ went up”

**he also descended (ULT)**  
**the Messiah had also previously gone down (UST)**

“Christ also came down”

**into the lower regions of the earth (ULT)**  
**to the lower parts of the earth (UST)**

This could mean: (1) This refers to the **lower regions** are a part of the **earth**. (2) This refers to **the lower regions** is another way of referring to the **earth** itself. Alternate translation: “into the lower regions, the earth”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...earth

### Translation Words - UST

- earth

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And this “He ascended,” what is it except that he also descended into the lower regions of the [earth](#)?

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> The words “he went up” certainly make us know that the Messiah had also previously gone down to the lower parts of the [earth](#).

## Ephesians 4:10

**so that he might fill all things (ULT)**  
**in order that he might fill the universe (UST)**

“so that he might be working powerfully everywhere”

**he might fill (ULT)**  
**he might (UST)**

“he might complete” or “he might satisfy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- heavens

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> He who descended is also himself he who ascended far above all the heavens, so that he might fill all things.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> The Messiah, who came down to earth from heaven, is also the one who returned upward to the most exalted position in heaven in order that he might fill the universe.

## Ephesians 4:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- apostles
- prophets
- evangelists
- pastors
- teachers

### Translation Words - UST

- to be apostles
- to be prophets
- to seek out people to tell them the good news about Jesus
- to care for
- to teach the groups of believers

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And he himself gave the apostles, and the prophets, and the evangelists, and the pastors and teachers,

### UST

<sup>11</sup> As gifts to his people, he appointed some of them to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to seek out people to tell them the good news about Jesus, and some to care for and to teach the groups of believers.

## Ephesians 4:12

**for the equipping of the saints (ULT)**  
**God appointed all of them to prepare God's people (UST)**

"to prepare the people whom he has set apart" or "to provide the believers with what they need"

**for the work of serving (ULT)**  
**to do the work of serving others (UST)**

"so that they can serve others"

**for the building up of the body of Christ (ULT)**  
**so that all the people who belong to the Messiah might become spiritually strong (UST)**

Paul is speaking of people who grow spiritually as if they were doing exercises to increase the strength of their physical bodies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the building up (ULT)**  
**so that...might become spiritually strong (UST)**

"the improvement"

**of the body of Christ**

The **body of Christ** refers to all of the members of Christ's Church.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...saints](#)
- [the work](#)
- [of...body](#)
- [of Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's people](#)
- [to do the work](#)
- [people who belong to](#)
- [Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> for the equipping of the [saints](#) for [the work](#) of serving, for the building up of the [body of Christ](#),

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> God appointed all of them to prepare [God's people to do the work](#) of serving others so that all the [people who belong to](#) the [Messiah](#) might become spiritually strong.

## Ephesians 4:13

### we all reach to the unity of the faith and the knowledge of the Son of God

The believers need to know Jesus as the Son of God if they are to be united in faith and mature as believers.

### we all reach to the unity of the faith (ULT) all of us together become what God wants us to be: united as we together fully trust in (UST)

The word **unity** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “we all become equally strong in faith” or “we all become united together in faith” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### we all reach to the unity of the faith (ULT) all of us together become what God wants us to be: united as we together fully trust in (UST)

The word **faith** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “become united together as believers” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the knowledge of the Son of God (ULT) the Son of God...experience his working in us (UST)

The word **knowledge** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “all know well the Son of God” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### of the Son of God (ULT) the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### to...a mature man (ULT) united...together...and completely mature as a group of believers (UST)

“to a mature believer”

### mature (ULT) and completely mature as a group of believers (UST)

“fully developed” or “grown up” or “complete”

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> until we all reach to the unity of the **faith** and the **knowledge** of the **Son of God**, to a **mature** man, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of **Christ**,

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> This work will continue until all of us together become what God wants us to be: united **as we** together **fully trust in** the **Son of God** and **experience his working in us, and completely mature as a group of believers**—as fully mature in trusting and knowing God as the **Messiah himself**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- of...faith
- knowledge
- of...Son of God
- mature
- of Christ

## Translation Words - UST

- as we...fully trust in
- Son of God
- experience his working in us
- and completely mature as a group of believers
- Messiah himself

## Ephesians 4:14

### so that (ULT)

### Then (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of gifted people in the church is to bring all the believers to spiritual maturity. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### we may no longer be children (ULT) we will no longer be spiritually immature, as little children are immature. We will no longer...We will not allow (UST)

Paul refers to believers who have not grown spiritually as if they were **children** who have had very little experience in life. Alternate translation: “we may no longer be like children” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### tossed back and forth by the waves and carried away by every wind of teaching (ULT)

Paul speaks of a believer who has not become mature and follows various wrong teachings as if that believer were a boat and the teachings were the **wind** and **waves** that move the boat in different directions on the water. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### through the trickery of people in cleverness for deceitful scheming (ULT) clever people who teach what is false to deceive us with their lies (UST)

The words **trickery**, **cleverness**, and **scheming** are abstract nouns. Alternate translation: “by crafty people who trick believers with clever lies” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of teaching
- deceitful

### Translation Words - UST

- follow every new teaching
- with their lies

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> so that we may no longer be children tossed back and forth by the waves and carried away by every wind of teaching through the trickery of people in cleverness for deceitful scheming.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then we will no longer be spiritually immature, as little children are immature. We will no longer follow every new teaching, always changing what we believe like a boat that goes one way and then the other as the wind and waves change direction. We will not allow clever people who teach what is false to deceive us with their lies.



## Ephesians 4:15

### Instead (ULT)

### Rather than that (UST)

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Following every changing teaching is in contrast to becoming mature in Christ and building up his body. Use a word in your language that indicates contrast. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### speaking the truth (ULT)

### as we...speak to each other what is true (UST)

The word **truth** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “speaking truthfully” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### in love (ULT)

### lovingly (UST)

the word **love** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “as the members love one another” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### into him...who is the head (ULT)

### like the Messiah...as...directs us, just like a person’s head directs the person’s body (UST)

Paul uses a metaphor of the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the **head** of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow in a healthy way. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- speaking the truth
- love
- head
- even Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- as we...speak to each other what is true
- lovingly
- he
- as...directs us, just like a person’s head directs the person’s body

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Instead, [speaking the truth](#) in [love](#), let us grow up in all things into him who is the [head](#), [even Christ](#),

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Rather than that, [as we lovingly speak to each other what is true](#), let us become more and more like the Messiah in every way as [he directs us](#), [just like a person’s head directs the person’s body](#).

## Ephesians 4:16

**from whom the whole body...causes the growth of the body (ULT)**

**He is the one who...us all...his body...we will grow together and make (UST)**

Paul continues the metaphor of the believers as a human **body** with Christ as the head to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow in a healthy way. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for building up itself in love (ULT)**  
**as we love each other...each other stronger (UST)**

The word **for** indicates a purpose clause. The purpose of all of the believers working together in harmony, as the members of a human body do, is so that all believers will grow in our ability to love each other and to love God. Use a word in your language that marks this as a purpose clause. (See: [Connect - Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**in love (ULT)**  
**as we love (UST)**

The word **love** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “as the members love one another” or “to be able to love each other more” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**by every supporting ligament (ULT)**  
**how to support each other and to work in a coordinated way (UST)**

Paul continues the metaphor comparing the believers to a human body. A **ligament** is a strong band that connects bones or holds organs in place in the body. Just as the body is held together by strong ligaments, so the believers are held together by love that grows stronger as the body parts grow and work together. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [of...body](#)
- [love](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [us all](#)
- [his body](#)
- [we love](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> from whom the whole [body](#), being joined and held together by every supporting ligament, according to the working in measure of each individual part, causes the growth of the [body](#) for building up itself in [love](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> He is the one who joins [us all](#) together and keeps us connected to each other. He teaches us how to support each other and to work in a coordinated way as he gives the ability that is appropriate to each one of us, just as a person's head does that for the parts of [his body](#). In this way, as [we love](#) each other, we will grow together and make each other stronger.

## Ephesians 4:17

### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells them what they should no longer do now that they, as believers, are sealed by the Holy Spirit of God.

### Therefore (ULT)

### For that reason (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ wants every believer to become spiritually mature and to serve the other believers. The result is that the Ephesian believers should no longer act as the Gentiles act. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### Therefore, I say this and strongly urge (ULT)

### For that reason, and with the authority of...I tell you this (UST)

“Because of what I have just said, I will now say something more in order to strongly encourage”

### in the Lord (ULT)

### with the authority of...the Lord Jesus (UST)

This could mean: (1) This refers to the authority of the Lord. (2) This may be stating that we all belong to the Lord.

### you...to walk no longer as the Gentiles also walk, in futility of their minds (ULT)

### from now on you must not live in the same way as the other non-Jews live. The way that they live comes from an empty way of thinking (UST)

Paul commonly uses this metaphor that compares walking to living one's life. Alternate translation: “you ... to stop living like the Gentiles with their worthless thoughts” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, I say this and strongly urge you **in the Lord, to walk** no longer **as** the **Gentiles** also **walk**, in **futility** of their **minds**.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> For that reason, and **with the authority of the Lord Jesus**, I tell you this: from now on you **must not live in the same way as** the other **non-Jews** live. **The way that they live comes from an empty way of thinking.**

### Translation Words - ULT

- in the Lord
- the Lord
- to walk
- walk
- as
- Gentiles
- futility
- of...minds

## Translation Words - UST

- with the authority of...the Lord Jesus
- the Lord Jesus
- way of thinking
- must...live
- live. The way that...live
- in the same way as
- non-Jews
- comes from an empty

## Ephesians 4:18

**They have been darkened in their understanding (ULT)**

**They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong (UST)**

This metaphor compares wrong thinking with darkness. Alternate translation: “they no longer think or reason clearly” or “they are not able to understand” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**They have been darkened in their understanding (ULT)**

**They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “Their way of thinking has become dark” or “They no longer think or reason clearly” or “They are not able to understand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them (ULT)**  
**because they try to live...completely separated from...God. They do this because they do not know what they are missing (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “because they do not know God, they cannot live the way that God wants his people to live” or “they have cut themselves off from the life of God by their ignorance” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**alienated (ULT)**

**completely separated from (UST)**

“cut off” or “separated”

**ignorance (ULT)**

**they do not know what they are missing (UST)**

“lack of knowledge” or “lack of information”

**because of the hardness of their hearts (ULT)**

**and because they stubbornly refuse to obey God (UST)**

The phrase **hardness of their hearts** is a metaphor that means “stubbornness.” Alternate translation: “because they are stubborn” or “because they refuse to listen to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> They have been darkened in their understanding, being alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them, because of the hardness of their hearts.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong because they try to live completely separated from God. They do this because they do not know what they are missing and because they stubbornly refuse to obey God.

**because of (ULT)****They do this because (UST)**

The connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The first reason is that they are ignorant of him. The result is that the Gentiles are separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**because of (ULT)****and because (UST)**

The connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The second reason is that their hearts are hardened. The result is that Gentiles are separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- They have been darkened
- in...understanding
- from...life
- of God
- hardness
- of...hearts

**Translation Words - UST**

- They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong
- They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong
- because they try to live
- God
- stubbornly refuse to obey God
- stubbornly refuse to obey God

## Ephesians 4:19

**have handed themselves over to sensuality  
(ULT)**

**and so they have devoted themselves to doing  
whatever shameful things their bodies desire  
(UST)**

Paul speaks of these people as if they were objects that they themselves were giving to other people, and he speaks of the way that they want to satisfy their physical desires as if the desires were the person to whom they give themselves. Alternate translation: “have given in to every physical desire” or “only want to satisfy their physical desires” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [greediness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and want to do them more and more](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> They, being dead to all feeling, have handed themselves over to sensuality for the practice of every kind of impurity with [greediness](#).

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> They have become unable to sense if something is good or bad, and so they have devoted themselves to doing whatever shameful things their bodies desire. They commit all kinds of immoral acts [and want to do them more and more](#).

## Ephesians 4:20

**But you did not thus learn about Christ (ULT)**  
**But that is not how you learned to live when**  
**you learned about the Messiah (UST)**

The word **thus** refers to the way that the Gentiles live, as described in [Ephesians 4:17-19](#). This emphasizes that what the believers learned from Christ was the opposite of that. Alternate translation: "But what you learned about the ways of Christ was not like that"

**But (ULT)**

**But (UST)**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The sinful way the Gentiles live is in contrast to the way that Paul taught the Ephesians to live according to the truth of Jesus. Use a connecting word in your language that marks a contrast here (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But you did not thus learn about [Christ](#),

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> But that is not how you learned to live when you learned about the [Messiah](#),



## Ephesians 4:21

**if indeed you have heard about him and were taught in him (ULT)**  
**to the extent that you have heard and understood the message about Jesus and have learned from him (UST)**

Paul knows that the people to whom he is writing have **heard** and been **taught** these things. He is using irony as a form of rebuke—if they are doing things contrary to the way of Christ, they know better than that and need to stop. See the UST (See: [Irony](#))

**were taught in him (ULT)**  
**have learned from him (UST)**

You can state this in active form. This could mean: (1) This may mean they received instruction in his ways. (2) This may mean that Jesus' people have taught them. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in...as the truth is...Jesus (ULT)**  
**from...since...his way...is the true way to live (UST)**

“as Jesus teaches us the true way to live” or “as everything about Jesus is true.” See the UST.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were taught](#)
- [as](#)
- [the truth](#)
- [in Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [have learned](#)
- [since](#)
- [his way](#)
- [his way](#)
- [the true way to live](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> if indeed you have heard about him and [were taught](#) in him, [as the truth](#) is [in Jesus](#).

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> to the extent that you have heard and understood the message about Jesus and [have learned](#) from him, [since his way](#) is [the true way to live](#).

## Ephesians 4:22

**You are to put aside what belongs to your former manner of life (ULT)**

**Your teachers taught you to stop living the way that you used to live (UST)**

Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing.  
Alternate translation: "You must stop living according to your former manner of life" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You are to put aside what belongs to your former manner of life, the old man (ULT)**  
**Your teachers taught you to stop living the way that you used to live...Living like that (UST)**

Paul is speaking of a way of living as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "You must stop doing the things that your former self did" or "Stop doing the things that you used to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the old man (ULT)**  
**Living like that (UST)**

The **old man** refers to the "old nature" or "former self," the way that the person was before the person became a believer in Christ (See: [Metaphor](#))

**that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires (ULT)**  
**Because you desired to do evil things, you deceived yourselves into thinking that those things were good...was destroying you spiritually (UST)**

Paul is continuing to speak of a sinful way of living as if it were a person who does evil things. Alternate translation: "when you fooled yourself into thinking that it was good to do whatever evil thing that you wanted to do" See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is corrupt](#)
- [deceitful](#)
- [desires](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [desired to do evil things](#)
- [you deceived yourselves into thinking that those things were good](#)
- [was destroying you spiritually](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> You are to put aside what belongs to your former manner of life, the old man that [is corrupt](#) because of its [deceitful desires](#),

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Your teachers taught you to stop living the way that you used to live. Because you [desired to do evil things](#), [you deceived yourselves into thinking that those things were good](#). Living like that [was destroying you spiritually](#).

## Ephesians 4:23

**to be renewed...in the spirit of your minds  
(ULT)  
must let God give...new...new...you...you a...  
spirit and a...way of thinking (UST)**

This may be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: “to allow God to change your attitudes and thoughts” or “to allow God to give you new attitudes and thoughts” See the UST (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> and to be renewed in the [spirit](#) of your [minds](#),

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So you must let God give you a new [spirit and a new way of thinking](#),

## Translation Words - ULT

- [in...spirit](#)
- [of...minds](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [a...spirit](#)
- [and a...way of thinking](#)

## Ephesians 4:24

**in righteousness and holiness of the truth (ULT)**

**to live in the right way with each other and with himself, in the true way of Jesus (UST)**

The words **righteousness**, **holiness**, and **truth** are abstract nouns. Alternate translation: “truly righteous and holy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**to put on the new man (ULT)**  
**you must start living like the new person (UST)**

Paul continues to speak of a way of living as if it were a person, and also as if it were clothing, so that one could **put on** the **new** person like a robe. Alternate translation: “be the new person” or “start living in the new way” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to put on
- was created
- God
- righteousness
- holiness
- of...truth

### Translation Words - UST

- you must start living like
- that God...in his own image
- created you...to be. He created you
- the right way with each other
- with himself
- true way of Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> and to put on the new man that was created according to God—in righteousness and holiness of the truth.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> and you must start living like the new person that God created you in his own image to be. He created you to live in the right way with each other and with himself, in the true way of Jesus.

## Ephesians 4:25

### Therefore (ULT)

### So (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God has created the believers as new, holy people. The result is that they would stop acting immorally like they used to live. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### putting aside lying (ULT)

### stop lying (UST)

Paul speaks of telling lies as if they were objects that the believers could set aside. Alternate translation: “no longer telling lies” or “instead of telling lies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### let each of you speak truth (ULT)

### to one another. Speak truthfully to each other (UST)

The word **truth** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “each of you should speak truthfully” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### because (ULT)

### because (UST)

The connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that believers are members of the same body of Christ. The result is that believers should speak the truth to each other. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### we are members of one another (ULT)

### we belong to each other as members of God’s family (UST)

Here Paul speaks of the close union of believers with each other as if they were each part of one single body. Alternate translation: “we belong to one another” or “we are all members of God’s family” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Therefore, putting aside lying, let each of you speak **truth** with his **neighbor**, because we are **members** of one another.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> So stop lying **to one another**. Speak **truthfully to each other** because we belong to each other **as members of God’s family**.

## Translation Words - ULT

- **truth**
- **neighbor**
- **members**

## Translation Words - UST

- **to one another...to each other**
- **truthfully**
- **as members of God’s family**

## Ephesians 4:26

**Be angry and do not sin (ULT)**

**Be angry about sinful behavior, but do not sin because you are angry (UST)**

"You may get angry, but do not sin" or "If you become angry, do not sin"

**Do not let the sun go down on your indignation (ULT)**

**Before the end of each day, take care of whatever has made you angry (UST)**

The **sun** going **down** represents nightfall or the end of the day. Alternate translation: "You must stop being angry before night comes" or "Let go of your anger before the day ends" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [do...sin](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin because you are angry](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Be angry and do not [sin](#). Do not let the sun go down on your indignation,

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Be angry about sinful behavior, but do not [sin because you are angry](#). Before the end of each day, take care of whatever has made you angry

## Ephesians 4:27

**nor give an opportunity to the devil (ULT)  
so that you will not allow the devil to do evil  
things among you (UST)**

“and do not give the devil an opportunity to lead you into sin”

### Translation Words - ULT

- to...devil

### Translation Words - UST

- devil

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> nor give an opportunity to the devil.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> so that you will not allow the devil to do evil things among you.

## Ephesians 4:28

### But rather (ULT) Instead (UST)

The connecting phrase **But rather** introduces a contrast relationship. The way a former thief should work hard to have something to share with others is in contrast to the way he formerly stole for himself. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### so that (ULT) so that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of working hard with ones own hands is to be able to meet the needs of others. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- he must labor, working
- good

### Translation Words - UST

- they must work hard, doing...work
- good

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> The thief must steal no longer. But rather, [he must labor, working good](#) with his hands, so that he may have something to share with those who have a need.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Those who have been stealing must not steal anymore. Instead, [they must work hard, doing good work](#) by their own efforts so that they may have something to give to those who are needy.



## Ephesians 4:29

### corrupt talk (ULT) harmful...things (UST)

This refers to speech that is cruel or rude.

### but (ULT) Instead (UST)

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Speaking what is corrupt is in contrast to speaking good things that will build up others. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### for building up (ULT) that will encourage people (UST)

“for encouraging” or “for strengthening”

### so that (ULT) so that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of speaking things that build up others is to give grace to those who hear the words. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### of the one in need, so that it might give grace to the hearers (ULT) when they need help so that God can work through your words to benefit those who hear (UST)

“the needy. In this way you will help those who hear you”

### so that it might give grace to the hearers (ULT) so that God can work through your words to benefit those who hear (UST)

The word **grace** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “so that those who hear you may be spiritually encouraged” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- corrupt
- is good
- grace

## Translation Words - UST

- harmful
- good

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Do not let any **corrupt** talk come out from your mouth, but whatever **is good** for building up of the one in need, so that it might give **grace** to the hearers,

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Do not say **harmful** things. Instead, say **good** things that will encourage people when they need help so that **God can work through your words to benefit** those who hear.

- God can work through your words to benefit

## Ephesians 4:30

**do not grieve (ULT)**

**do not make...sad by how you live (UST)**

“do not distress” or “do not upset”

**by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption (ULT)**

**God has marked you as his own by giving you the Holy Spirit, who will be with you until the day that the Messiah will rescue you from this world (UST)**

The Holy Spirit assures believers that God will redeem them. Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a mark that God puts on believers to show that he owns them. Alternate translation: “for he is the seal that assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption” or “for he is the one who assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption (ULT)**

**God has marked you as his own by giving you the Holy Spirit, who will be with you until the day that the Messiah will rescue you from this world (UST)**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “for he has sealed you for the day of redemption” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy Spirit of God](#)
- [you were sealed](#)
- [the day](#)
- [of redemption](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God has marked you as his own](#)
- [the day](#)
- [that the Messiah will rescue you from this world](#)
- [Holy Spirit of God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> and do not grieve the [Holy Spirit of God](#), by whom [you were sealed](#) for the day of redemption.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [God has marked you as his own](#) by giving you the Holy Spirit, who will be with you until [the day that the Messiah will rescue you from this world](#). So do not make the [Holy Spirit of God](#) sad by how you live.

## Ephesians 4:31

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes his instructions on what believers should not do and ends with what they must do.

### Let...be removed (ULT)

### Do your best to...stop behaving in these ways (UST)

Paul speaks of attitudes and behaviors as though they were physical objects that can be removed. Alternate translation: "you must not allow ... to be part of your life" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### bitterness, and rage, and anger (ULT)

### Do not be resentful or furious toward others or even become angry with others (UST)

These are abstract nouns that can be expressed as adjectives. Alternate translation: "being bitter, and intensely angry, and angry" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### malice (ULT)

### act maliciously in any way (UST)

The word **malice** is an abstract noun that can be expressed as an adjective. Alternate translation: "being malicious" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [anger](#)
- [insults](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [even become angry with others](#)
- [slander others](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Let all bitterness, and rage, and [anger](#), and quarreling, and [insults](#) be removed from yourselves, along with all malice.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Do your best to completely stop behaving in these ways: Do not be resentful or furious toward others or [even become angry with others](#). Do not shout abusively at others or [slander others](#). Never act maliciously in any way.

## Ephesians 4:32

### Instead (ULT)

### Rather than behave like that (UST)

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Speaking angry and hurtful things is in contrast to speaking kind and tender things to one another. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### tenderhearted (ULT)

### Act mercifully toward each other (UST)

“gentle and compassionate towards others”

### Translation Words - ULT

- forgiving
- forgave
- just as
- God
- in Christ
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Forgive
- forgave
- in the same way that
- God
- through what the Messiah has done
- the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Instead, be kind to each other, tenderhearted, [forgiving](#) one another, [just as God in Christ](#) also [forgave](#) you.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Rather than behave like that, be kind to one another. Act mercifully toward each other. [Forgive](#) each other [in the same way that God](#) also [forgave](#) you [through what the Messiah](#) has done for you.

## **Ephesians 5**

### **Ephesians 5 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the words of verse 14.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Inheritance of the kingdom of Christ**

Some scholars believe that those who continue to practice the things listed in 5:5 will not inherit eternal life. But God can forgive all the sins listed in this verse. Immoral, impure, or greedy people can still receive eternal life if they repent and believe in Jesus. God will be the one who decides this. (See: [forgive](#), [forgiven](#), [forgiveness](#), [pardon](#), [pardoned](#), [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#) and [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#))

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **Wives, submit to your husbands**

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe that men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe that God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they interpret this issue affect how they translate this passage.

# Ephesians 5:1

## Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to tell the believers how they should and should not live as God's children.

**Therefore, be imitators of God (ULT)**  
**Because of what God has done for you,**  
**imitate him...imitate the father (UST)**

The word **imitators** is a verbal noun, and can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "Therefore, imitate God" or "Therefore you should do what God does."

**Therefore (ULT)**  
**Because of what...has done for you (UST)**

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason (stated in [Ephesians 4:32](#)) is that God has forgiven us through Christ. The result (stated here) is that believers should imitate what God is like. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**as beloved children (ULT)**  
**just as children...who loves them dearly (UST)**

God desires us to imitate or follow him since we are his spiritual children. Alternate translation: "as dearly loved children imitate their fathers" or "because you are his children and he loves you dearly" (See: [Simile](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [imitators](#)
- [of God](#)
- [as](#)
- [beloved](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God...the father](#)
- [imitate him...imitate](#)
- [just as](#)
- [who loves them dearly](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, be [imitators of God](#), [as beloved](#) children,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Because of what [God](#) has done for you, [imitate him just as](#) children [imitate the father who loves them dearly](#).

## Ephesians 5:2

### walk in love (ULT)

**Do everything in a way that shows that you love others (UST)**

To **walk** is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. Alternate translation: "live a life of love" or "always love each other" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**an offering and sacrifice to God for a fragrant aroma (ULT)**  
**as the offering and sacrifice to God in our place. This sacrifice pleased God very much (UST)**

This metaphor compares Christ dying on the cross for our sins with an Old Testament **sacrifice** for sin, which were roasted in a fire and gave off a pleasing smell. Alternate translation: "like a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God" or "an offering and sacrifice to God that pleased God very much" See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> and [walk](#) in [love](#), [as](#) also [Christ](#) loved us and gave himself up for us, [an offering](#) and [sacrifice to God](#) for a fragrant aroma.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [Do everything in a way that shows that you love others](#). Be like the [Messiah](#), [who loved](#) us [so much](#) that he willingly died for us on the cross [as the offering](#) and [sacrifice to God in our place](#). This [sacrifice](#) pleased [God](#) very much.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [walk](#)
- [love](#)
- [loved](#)
- [as](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [an offering](#)
- [sacrifice](#)
- [to God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Do everything in a way that](#)
- [shows that you love others](#)
- [who loved...so much](#)
- [Be like](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [as the offering](#)
- [sacrifice...in our place. This sacrifice](#)
- [God...God](#)



## Ephesians 5:3

**But sexual immorality and every impurity or greed must not even be named among you (ULT)**

**But there should be no reason for anyone to even suggest that any of you are involved in sexual sin or any kind of immoral or obsessive sexual behavior (UST)**

You can state this in an active form: "Do not do anything that would let anyone think that you are guilty of sexual immorality or any kind of impurity or greed." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**But (ULT)**

**But (UST)**

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The fragrant offering and sacrifice to God is in contrast to sinful acts and thoughts that are not fitting for saints. Use a connecting word that indicates a contrast in your language. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

**every impurity (ULT)**

**any kind of immoral (UST)**

"any moral uncleanness"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sexual immorality](#)
- [greed](#)
- [just as](#)
- [for saints](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are involved in sexual sin](#)
- [obsessive sexual behavior](#)
- [Such sins do not belong](#)
- [among God's people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But [sexual immorality](#) and every impurity or [greed](#) must not even be named among you, [just as](#) is proper [for saints](#),

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> But there should be no reason for anyone to even suggest that any of you [are involved in sexual sin](#) or any kind of immoral or [obsessive sexual behavior](#). [Such sins do not belong among God's people](#).

## Ephesians 5:4

**but instead, thanksgiving (ULT)**  
**Instead, express the things that you are thankful for (UST)**

The word **thanksgiving** is a verbal noun, and can be translated with a verb: “instead of those things, you should thank God”

**but instead (ULT)**  
**Instead (UST)**

The connecting phrase **but instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Sinful acts and thoughts are in contrast to thanksgiving to God. Use a connecting word that indicates a contrast in your language. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [foolish talk](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [say foolish things](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> and filthiness and [foolish talk](#) or crude jokes—which are not fitting—but instead, thanksgiving.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> When you speak to each other, do not tell obscene stories or [say foolish things](#) or joke about committing sins. Such things are not what people who belong to God talk about. Instead, express the things that you are thankful for.

## Ephesians 5:5

### unclean (ULT) indecent (UST)

Here being **unclean** (dirty) is a metaphor for being sinful. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### has no inheritance (ULT) these people will be excluded (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: “will receive nothing” or “has no part” See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [know...for certain](#)
- [of God](#)
- [sexually immoral](#)
- [greedy person](#)
- [an idolater](#)
- [inheritance](#)
- [kingdom of Christ and of God](#)
- [of Christ](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [is quite true](#)
- [these people will be excluded](#)
- [worshiping an idol](#)
- [kingdom of the Messiah who is God](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [God](#)
- [who is sexually immoral](#)
- [who is obsessed with sex](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Indeed, [know](#) this [for certain](#), that every [sexually immoral](#) or unclean or [greedy person](#)—that is, [an idolater](#)—has no [inheritance](#) in the [kingdom of Christ and of God](#).

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> It [is quite true](#) that [these people will be excluded](#) from the [kingdom of the Messiah who is God](#): everyone [who is sexually immoral](#) or indecent, or [who is obsessed with sex](#), which is the same as [worshiping an idol](#).

## Ephesians 5:6

**with empty words (ULT)**  
**by telling you that God will not punish people**  
**who do these things (UST)**

“with words that have no truth in them” or “by speaking words that are not true”

**for (ULT)**  
**It is (UST)**

The connecting word **for** introduces a reason-result relationship. The result is stated first: that the Ephesian believers should not let anyone deceive them with empty words. Then the reason is stated: that the wrath of God will judge those things. Use a phrase that connects a reason to a result, and put them in the order that is most natural in your language. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**the wrath of God is coming upon (ULT)**

The word **wrath** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “God will certainly punish” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the sons of disobedience (ULT)**  
**the people who disobey him (UST)**

This is an idiom that means, “people who habitually disobey” or “people who are characterized by disobedience”  
 Alternate translation: “those who disobey God” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Let...deceive
- wrath
- of God
- sons
- of disobedience

### Translation Words - UST

- Do...let...deceive
- God
- that...will punish
- people
- disobey him

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Let no one [deceive](#) you with empty words, for because of these things the [wrath of God](#) is coming upon the [sons of disobedience](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Do not let anyone [deceive](#) you by telling you that God will not punish people who do these things. It is because of these very things that [God will punish](#) the [people](#) who [disobey him](#).

## Ephesians 5:7

### Therefore (ULT)

### So (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God will judge those people in his wrath. The result is that the Ephesian believers should not become partners with evil men. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, do not become partners with them,

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> So do not join with those people in doing these kinds of sins.

## Ephesians 5:8

**because formerly you were darkness (ULT)**  
**Remember that before you believed in the Lord Jesus, you did not know what was true, just as people who are in a dark place do not know what is around them (UST)**

Just as one cannot see in the dark, so people who love to sin cannot see or understand the things of God. Alternate translation: “because formerly you did not understand anything about God” See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

**because (ULT)**  
**Remember that (UST)**

The connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The result is stated first (v.7): that the Ephesian believers should not become partners with evil men. The reason is stated second (v. 8): that the Ephesian believers are no longer darkness, but are now light. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result, using the order that is most natural for your language. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**but now are light in the Lord (ULT)**  
**But now it is as though you have come out into the light, because the Lord has shown to you what is true...the Lord (UST)**

Just as one can see in the **light**, so people whom God has saved understand how to please God. Alternate translation: “but now you know God and can live for him” See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

**but (ULT)**  
**But (UST)**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. The fact that the Ephesian believers were formerly darkness is in contrast to the fact that they are now light. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

**Walk as children of light (ULT)**  
**So live in the way that...has shown to you (UST)**

To **Walk** on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Alternate translation: “Live as people who understand what the Lord wants them to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**as children of light (ULT)**  
**So...in the way that...has shown to you (UST)**

God desires us to imitate or follow him since we are his spiritual **children**. Alternate translation: “as God’s children who know the truth” or “because you are God’s children and see the truth” (See: [Simile](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> because formerly you were **darkness**, but now **are light in the Lord**. **Walk as children of light**

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Remember that before you believed in the Lord Jesus, you did not know **what was true, just as people who are in a dark place do not know what is around them**. But now **it is as though you have come out into the light, because the Lord has shown to you what is true. So live in the way that the Lord has shown to you.**

## Translation Words - ULT

- darkness
- are light
- of light
- in the Lord
- the Lord
- Walk
- as

## Translation Words - UST

- not...what was true, just as people who are in a dark place do not know what is around them
- it is as though you have come out into the light
- in the way that...has shown to you
- because the Lord has shown to you what is true...the Lord
- the Lord...the Lord
- So
- live

## Ephesians 5:9

### the...fruit of the light consists in all goodness and righteousness and truth (ULT)

Here, **fruit** is a metaphor for “result” or “outcome.” Alternate translation: “the result of living in the light is good work, right living, and truthful behavior” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for (ULT)

### Because (UST)

The connecting word **for** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that fruit of the light is goodness and righteousness and truth. The result is that the Ephesian believers should walk as children of light. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> (for the [fruit](#) of the [light](#) consists in all [goodness](#) and [righteousness](#) and [truth](#)),

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Because [just as people who have light will walk in the right way, as a result of knowing Jesus](#) you can always live in a way that is [good](#), [right](#), and [true](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fruit](#)
- [of...light](#)
- [goodness](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [truth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [just as people who have...will walk in the right way, as a result of knowing](#)
- [light...Jesus](#)
- [good](#)
- [right](#)
- [true](#)



## Ephesians 5:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- carefully testing
- to...Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- As you live this way, keep learning
- Lord

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> carefully testing what is pleasing to the Lord.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> As you live this way, keep learning what pleases the Lord.

## Ephesians 5:11

**do not take part in the unfruitful works of darkness (ULT)**

**do not participate together with those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness (UST)**

Paul speaks of the useless, sinful things that unbelievers do as if they are evil deeds that people do in the dark so no one will see them.

Alternate translation: "do not do useless, sinful things with unbelievers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the unfruitful works of darkness (ULT)**

**those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness (UST)**

Here Paul is comparing evil actions to an unhealthy tree that produces nothing good. Alternate translation: "actions that do nothing good, useful, or profitable, caused by darkness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the unfruitful works of darkness (ULT)**

**those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness (UST)**

The word **darkness** is often used to represent sin. In this instance, these works result from sinful motives.

Alternate translation: "deeds that are worthless because they were done from sinful motives" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**but rather (ULT)**

**Instead (UST)**

The connecting phrase **but rather** introduces contrast relationship. Participating in the works of darkness is in contrast to exposing them. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

**expose them (ULT)**

**expose to everyone how worthless those deeds are (UST)**

Speaking against the works of darkness is spoken of as bringing them out into the light so that people can see them. Alternate translation: "bring them out into the light" or "uncover them" or "show and tell people how wrong these actions are" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [unfruitful](#)
- [in...works](#)
- [of darkness](#)
- [expose them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And do not take part in the [unfruitful works of darkness](#), but rather even [expose them](#).

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> So do not participate together with those who are doing the [worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness](#). Instead, [expose to everyone how worthless those deeds are](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- worthless
- the...deeds that they do
- in spiritual darkness
- expose to everyone how worthless those deeds are

## Ephesians 5:12

**them (ULT)**

**that those people (UST)**

Here, **them** refers to the “sons of disobedience” mentioned in 5:6 and also referred to as “them” in 5:7. If it is unclear who “them” refers to in either place, then use “those who disobey God” or a similar phrase. (See: [Pronouns – When to Use Them](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [shameful](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [shameful for God’s people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For it is [shameful](#) even to mention the things done by them in secret.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Of course it is [shameful for God’s people](#) to even talk about the evil things that those people do in secret,

## Ephesians 5:13

### General Information:

It is unknown if this quotation is a combination of quotations from the prophet Isaiah or a quotation from a hymn sung by the believers.

### But (ULT) but (UST)

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Hiding the shameful works of darkness now is in contrast to the light exposing them later. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

**everything...that is revealed is light (ULT)**  
**these deeds...it...reveal to everyone...Then**  
**people can examine and judge that thing that**  
**light has exposed (UST)**

Paul makes this general statement in order to imply that God's Word shows people's actions to be good or bad. The Bible often speaks of God's truth as if it were **light** that could reveal the character of something. Alternate translation: "if you compare everything to what God says, you can know if it is good or bad" See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- exposed
- light
- light
- is revealed
- is revealed

### Translation Words - UST

- it is necessary for us to expose...This is like when we bring
- people can know and understand that...are evil...what...truly is
- reveal to everyone...Then people can examine and judge
- into the light
- light

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But everything **exposed** by the **light is revealed**, for everything that **is revealed** is **light**.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> but **it is necessary for us to expose** them so that **people can know and understand that** these deeds **are evil**. **This is like when we bring** something **into the light** in order to **reveal to everyone what it truly is**. **Then people can examine and judge** that thing that **light** has exposed.

## Ephesians 5:14

### Therefore (ULT)

### This is what believers are talking about when (UST)

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that their sins will be revealed by the light. The result is that sinners should allow Christ to shine on them. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### Awake, O sleeper, and arise from the dead (ULT)

Possible meanings are: (1) Paul is addressing the believers and using death as a metaphor for their areas of spiritual weakness that they need to become aware of and reject. (2) Paul is addressing unbelievers who need to wake up from being dead spiritually just as a person who has died must come alive again in order to respond. See the UST (See: [Apostrophe](#))

### O sleeper (ULT)

### Before you knew God you were like someone asleep...You who are asleep (UST)

This could mean: (1) Paul addresses this comment directly to the believers who are reading or hearing the letter. (2) Paul addresses this comment directly to unbelievers who are not reading or hearing the letter. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

### from the dead (ULT)

This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld. To arise from among them speaks of becoming alive again and is a metaphor for becoming alive spiritually and living for God. Alternate Translation: “from among all those who have died” or “from among those who are spiritually dead” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### will shine on you (ULT)

### will show...you...what is true...just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness (UST)

Here, **you** refers to the “sleeper” and is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Therefore it says, “Awake, O [sleeper](#), and [arise](#) from the [dead](#), and [Christ](#) will shine on you.”

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [Before you knew God you were like someone asleep or dead in a dark place.](#) This is what believers are talking about when they say, “[You who are asleep](#), wake up! [You who are dead](#), [come out of the darkness and live!](#) The [Messiah](#) will show you what is true, just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness.”

**Christ will shine on you (ULT)**

**The Messiah...will show...you...what is true...just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness (UST)**

**Christ** will enable an unbeliever to understand how evil his deeds are and how Christ will forgive him and give him new life, just as light shows what actually is there that the darkness had hid. This also applies to anything that a believer has not yet recognized as sinful. Alternate translation: "Christ will show you what is right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sleeper](#)
- [arise](#)
- [dead](#)
- [Christ](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Before you knew God you were like someone asleep...You who are asleep](#)
- [or dead in a dark place...You who are dead](#)
- [come out of the darkness and live](#)
- [Messiah](#)

## Ephesians 5:15

### Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk— not as unwise but as wise

People who are **unwise** do not guard themselves against sin. Wise people, however, can identify sin and flee from it. Alternate translation: “Therefore, you must be careful to live as a wise person rather than a foolish person”

#### therefore (ULT)

#### So (UST)

The connecting word **therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ has shown the light on him. The result is that the sinner will walk carefully in the light. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

#### but (ULT)

#### Instead (UST)

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Being unwise is in contrast to being wise. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

#### as wise (ULT)

#### as wise people (UST)

The verb “walk” is left out. You can state this clearly. Alternate translation: “walk as wise” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you walk
- as
- as (2)
- wise

### Translation Words - UST

- you live...behave...do...behave...do
- as
- as (2)
- wise people

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Watch carefully, therefore, how **you walk**—not **as** unwise but **as wise**,

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> So be very careful how **you live**. Do not **behave as** foolish people do. Instead, **behave as wise people do**.



## Ephesians 5:16

### redeeming the time (ULT)

**Do the most good that you can with the time that you have (UST)**

Using time wisely is spoken of as if it were **redeeming the time**.  
Alternate translation: “doing the best things you can with your time” or “using time wisely” or “putting time to its best use” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### because the days are evil (ULT)

**because people are doing more and more evil things every day (UST)**

The word **days** is a metonym for what people do during those days. Alternate translation: “because the people around you are constantly doing all kinds of evil things and the opportunities that you have to do good may become few” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### because (ULT)

### because (UST)

The connecting word **because** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the days are evil. The result is that the believers must redeem the time. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [redeeming](#)
- [time](#)
- [days](#)
- [evil](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Do the most good that you can with](#)
- [time that you have](#)
- [people...doing...evil things](#)
- [more and more...every day](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> [redeeming](#) the [time](#) because the [days](#) are [evil](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [Do the most good that you can with the time that you have](#), because [people](#) are [doing more and more evil things every day](#).

## Ephesians 5:17

### Because of this (ULT) So (UST)

The connecting phrase **Because of this** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the days are evil. The result is that the believers will not be foolish, but understand God's will. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### but (ULT)

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Being foolish is in contrast to understanding God's will. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- foolish
- understand
- will of the Lord
- of...Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- be wise
- understand well
- it is that...the Lord Jesus...wants you to do, and do it
- Lord Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Because of this, do not be foolish, but understand what the will of the Lord is.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> So be wise, understand well what it is that the Lord Jesus wants you to do, and do it!

## Ephesians 5:18

### Connecting Statement:

Paul ends his instructions on how all believers should live.

### And do not get drunk with wine (ULT)

“You should not get drunk from drinking wine”

### in which is recklessness (ULT) because people cannot control themselves when they are drunk (UST)

The word **recklessness** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation:  
“which leads to reckless behavior” or “because that will ruin you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### in...Instead, be filled...the Spirit (ULT) because...Instead, let...God’s Spirit...control what you do at all times (UST)

“Instead, you should be controlled by the Holy Spirit”

### Instead (ULT)

### Instead (UST)

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Being drunk is in contrast to being filled with the Spirit. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- do...get drunk
- with wine
- be filled
- the Spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- become drunk
- by drinking alcoholic drinks
- God’s Spirit
- let...control what you do at all times

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And do not [get drunk with wine](#), in which is recklessness. Instead, [be filled with the Spirit](#),

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Do not [become drunk by drinking alcoholic drinks](#), because people cannot control themselves when they are drunk. Instead, let [God’s Spirit control what you do at all times](#).

## Ephesians 5:19

### psalms and hymns and spiritual songs (ULT) Psalms...and songs about the Messiah and songs that God's Spirit gives you (UST)

Possible meanings are that: (1) Paul is using these words as a merism for "all sorts of songs to praise God" (2) Paul is listing specific forms of music. (See: [Merism](#))

#### psalms (ULT) Psalms (UST)

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

#### hymns (ULT) songs about the Messiah (UST)

These are songs of praise and worship that may have been written specifically for Christians to sing.

#### spiritual songs (ULT) songs that God's Spirit gives you (UST)

Possible meanings are: (1) these are songs that the Holy Spirit inspires a person to sing right at that moment (2) **spiritual songs** and "hymns" form a doublet. They mean basically the same thing, and you could use one word for these instead of two. (See: [Doublet](#))

#### in your heart (ULT) come from deep within you as sincere praise (UST)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's thoughts or inner being. This could mean: (1) They should do this with true motives and sincerity. Alternate translation: "from deep within your being" or "sincerely" (2) They should do this with enthusiasm: Alternate translation: "with all of your being" or "enthusiastically" See the UST (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- psalms
- singing psalms
- spiritual
- in...heart
- to...Lord

#### Translation Words - UST

- Psalms
- Let this music

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> speaking to each other in [psalms](#) and hymns and [spiritual](#) songs, singing and [singing psalms](#) in your [heart](#) to the [Lord](#),

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Sing to each other [Psalms](#) and songs about the Messiah and songs [that God's Spirit gives you](#). [Let this music come from deep within you as sincere praise](#) to the [Lord](#).

- that God's Spirit gives you
- come from deep within...as sincere praise
- Lord

## Ephesians 5:20

**in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)  
because of what our Lord Jesus the Messiah  
has done for you (UST)**

Here, **name** could mean: (1) This refers to Jesus himself. Alternate translation: “because you belong to our Lord Jesus Christ” (2) This refers to the authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: “with the authority of our Lord Jesus Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to God, even the Father (ULT)  
God the Father (UST)**

“to God, who is our father”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the name](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [to God...even the Father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God...the Father](#)
- [because of what...has done for you](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> giving thanks always for everything in [the name](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#) to [God, even the Father](#),

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> At all times thank [God the Father](#) for everything [because of what](#) our [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#) has done for you.

## Ephesians 5:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- submitting yourselves
- reverence
- for Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Humbly submit yourselves
- you deeply respect
- the Messiah

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> submitting yourselves to one another  
in reverence for Christ—

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Humbly submit yourselves to each  
other because you deeply respect the  
Messiah.

## Ephesians 5:22

### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to one another ([Ephesians 5:21](#)). He starts with instructions to wives and husbands on how they should act toward each other.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [as](#)
- [to...Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> wives, to your own husbands, [as](#) to the [Lord](#).

#### UST

<sup>22-23</sup> Wives should submit to their own husband's leadership as they do to the Lord Jesus because the husband is the leader of the wife as also the Messiah is the leader of the worldwide assembly of believers. He is the Savior who has saved all believers from being condemned for their sins.



## Ephesians 5:23

### For (ULT)

The connecting word **For** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the husband is head of the wife in the same way Christ is head of the church. The result is that wives should submit to their husbands. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### the head of the wife...the head of the church (ULT)

The word **head** here represents the leader. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of the body (ULT)

The church is often referred to as the **body** of Christ.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the head](#)
- [the head \(2\)](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [as...is](#)
- [of...church](#)
- [the savior](#)
- [of...body](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [body](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [church, Church](#)
- [Savior, savior](#)
- [head](#)
- [head \(2\)](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

### ULT

**23** For a husband is [the head](#) of the wife as [Christ](#) also [is the head](#) of the [church](#) —he himself is [the savior](#) of the [body](#).

### UST

**22-23** Wives should submit to their own husband's leadership as they do to the Lord Jesus because the husband is the leader of the wife as also the Messiah is the leader of the worldwide assembly of believers. He is the Savior who has saved all believers from being condemned for their sins.

## Ephesians 5:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- church
- is subject
- to Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- just as
- all believers
- submit themselves...must...submit themselves
- Messiah

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But as the church is subject to Christ, so also are wives to their husbands in everything.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> As for wives, just as all believers submit themselves to the authority of the Messiah, in the same way wives must also submit themselves completely to the authority of their husbands.

## Ephesians 5:25

### General Information:

Here the words **himself** and **he** refer to Christ. The word **her** refers to the church.

### love your wives (ULT)

### love your wife (UST)

Here, **love** means that the husband unselfishly does what is best for the wife, unselfishly serving or giving to his wife.

### gave himself up (ULT)

### He...gave up his own life...on the cross (UST)

“allowed people to kill him”

### for her (ULT)

### for us (UST)

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though it were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: “for us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- love
- loved
- just as
- Christ
- church

### Translation Words - UST

- love
- loved
- as much as
- Messiah
- all who would believe in him

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Husbands, **love** your wives **just as** **Christ** also **loved** the **church** and gave himself up for her,

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Each of you husbands, **love** your wife **as much as** the **Messiah loved all who would believe in him**. He even gave up his own life for us on the cross

## Ephesians 5:26

### so that (ULT)

### so that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ giving himself up to death is to sanctify the church. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### he might sanctify her, having cleansed her (ULT)

### he might set us apart for himself. He purified us (UST)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> so that [he might sanctify](#) her, having cleansed her by the [washing of water](#) with [the word](#),

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> so that [he might set](#) us [apart for himself](#). He purified us by [telling us his plan to forgive us](#) and by [removing our sins](#) as though [washing them away](#) in [water](#).

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though it were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: “he might make us holy, having cleansed us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word (ULT)

### He purified us by telling us his plan to forgive us and by removing our sins as though washing them away in water (UST)

Possible meanings are: (1) Paul is referring to God making Christ’s people clean by the preaching and acceptance of God’s **word** in the gospel message and through **water** baptism in Christ. (2) Paul speaks of God making us spiritually clean from our sins by the message as if God were making our bodies clean by washing them with **water**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he might sanctify](#)
- [by...washing](#)
- [of water](#)
- [the word](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he might set...apart for himself](#)
- [telling us his plan to forgive us](#)
- [removing our sins...washing them away](#)
- [water](#)

## Ephesians 5:27

### so that (ULT)

### did this so that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ cleansing the church with the word is to present the church to himself as a glorious bride. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### not having stain or wrinkle (ULT)

### that does not have any sin or moral

### imperfection (UST)

Paul speaks of the church as though it were a garment that is clean and in perfect condition. Alternate translation: “not having any defect” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### not having stain or wrinkle (ULT)

### that does not have any sin or moral imperfection (UST)

Here, **stain** and **wrinkle** represent the same idea of defect in two ways to emphasize the church’s purity. If your language does not have two different words, you can use one word for this. (See: [Doublet](#))

### but (ULT)

### but instead (UST)

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. The church having stains and wrinkles of sin is in contrast to the church being holy and blameless. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### so that (ULT)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ washing the church is to make the church holy and blameless. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### holy and blameless (ULT)

### holy and perfect (UST)

Here, **blameless** means basically the same thing as **holy**. Paul uses the two together to emphasize the church’s purity. If your language does not have two different words, you can use one word for this. (See: [Doublet](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- church
- as glorious
- holy
- blameless

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> so that he might present the church to himself as glorious, not having stain or wrinkle or any of those things, but so that she might be holy and blameless.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> He did this so that he could present the group of all believers to himself as a glorious group that does not have any sin or moral imperfection, but instead is holy and perfect, like a glorious bride ready to meet her groom.

## Translation Words - UST

- group of all believers
- as a glorious group...like a glorious bride ready
- holy
- perfect

## Ephesians 5:28

### as their own bodies (ULT)

### as much as...his own body (UST)

You can state explicitly that people love **their own bodies**. Alternate translation: "as husbands love their own bodies" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to love
- who loves
- loves
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- love...he loves
- who loves
- is also, by doing that, loving
- as much as

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> In the same way, husbands also ought [to love](#) their own wives [as](#) their own bodies. He [who loves](#) his own wife [loves](#) himself.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> In that same way, each man should [love](#) his own wife [as much as he loves](#) his own body. A man [who loves](#) his wife [is also, by doing that, loving](#) himself

## Ephesians 5:29

### but he nourishes (ULT)

“but he feeds”

### but (ULT)

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Hating one’s own body is in contrast to caring for it. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [just as...does](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [church](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [church, Church](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> For no one ever hated his own [body](#), but he nourishes and treats it with care, [just as Christ](#) also [does](#) the [church](#),

### UST

<sup>29-30</sup> because no one ever hated his own body. Instead, he feeds his own body and cares for it, just like the Messiah also cares for all us believers in his worldwide assembly. We have become one group of believers that belongs to him.



## Ephesians 5:30

### because (ULT)

The connecting word **because** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the church is Christ's body. The result is that Christ cares for the church. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### we are members of his body (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of the close union of believers with Christ as if they were part of his own **body**, for which he would naturally care. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [members](#)
- [of...body](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [body](#)
- [member, body parts](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> because we are [members](#) of his [body](#).

### UST

<sup>29-30</sup> because no one ever hated his own body. Instead, he feeds his own body and cares for it, just like the Messiah also cares for all us believers in his worldwide assembly. We have become one group of believers that belongs to him.

# Ephesians 5:31

## General Information:

The quotation is from the writings of Moses in the Old Testament.

## General Information:

The words **his** and **himself** refer to a male believer who marries.

## For this reason (ULT)

## Therefore (UST)

The connecting phrase **For this reason** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. In this case, this phrase is part of a quotation from Genesis 2:24 and so the reason is not stated here, but it is stated in Genesis 2:23 that woman was created out of man.

The result is that a man will leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife. If it is confusing to not state the reason, you can include a footnote that says, "the reason for this is that woman was created out of man. See Genesis 2:23" (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [father](#)
- [flesh](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [father](#)
- [person](#)

## ULT

<sup>31</sup> "For this reason a man will leave his [father](#) and his mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will become one [flesh](#)."

## UST

<sup>31</sup> The scriptures say this about people who marry: "Therefore a man will leave his [father](#) and his mother and will join himself to his wife, and the two of them will become as though they were one [person](#)."

## Ephesians 5:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- mystery
- Christ
- church

### Translation Words - UST

- that we cannot understand...of a husband and wife
- the Messiah
- group of people who belong to him

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> This **mystery** is great—but I am speaking about **Christ** and about the **church**.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> There is very much about this **that we cannot understand**, but I am telling you that this example **of a husband and wife** also helps us to understand the relationship between **the Messiah** and the **group of people who belong to him**.

## Ephesians 5:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- respect

### Translation Words - UST

- as
- must deeply respect

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Nevertheless, you also—each one of you—must love his own wife in this way —as himself, and the wife must respect her husband.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> However, as for you, each man must love his wife just as he loves himself, and each woman must deeply respect her husband.

## **Ephesians 6**

### **Ephesians 6 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Slavery**

Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about working to please God whether as a slave or as a master. What Paul teaches here about slavery would have been surprising. In his time, masters were not expected to treat their slaves with respect and not threaten them.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Armor of God**

This extended metaphor describes how Christians can protect themselves when spiritually attacked. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#) and [Metaphor](#))

## Ephesians 6:1

### General Information:

The command in verse one is plural. Then in verses two and three Paul quotes from the law of Moses. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so **your** and **you** are singular there. If that does not make sense, you may need to translate them as plurals. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to each other. He gives instructions to children, fathers, workers, and masters.

### in the Lord (ULT) as a way of serving the Lord Jesus (UST)

“because you belong to the Lord” or “as followers of the Lord”

### for (ULT) because (UST)

The connecting word **for** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that children should do what is right. The result is that children should obey their parents. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Children](#)
- [obey](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [righteous](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [As for you who are children](#)
- [obey](#)
- [as a way of serving the Lord Jesus](#)
- [the Lord Jesus](#)
- [right for you to do](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [Children](#), [obey](#) your parents [in the Lord](#), for this is [righteous](#).

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [As for you who are children](#), [obey](#) your parents [as a way of serving the Lord Jesus](#) because it is [right for you to do](#) that.

## Ephesians 6:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Honor
- father
- commandment
- a promise

### Translation Words - UST

- Greatly respect
- father
- law that God commanded
- he also promised something. He promised

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Honor your father and mother”  
(which is the first commandment with a promise),

### UST

<sup>2</sup> God commanded in the scriptures,  
“Greatly respect your father and  
mother.” That is the first law that God  
commanded in which he also promised  
something. He promised,

## Ephesians 6:3

### so that (ULT)

### If you do that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of obeying your father and mother is to live well and long on the earth. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> “so that it may be well with you and you may be long-lived on the [earth](#).”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> “If you do that, you will prosper, and you will live a long time on the [earth](#).”



## Ephesians 6:4

**do not provoke your children to anger (ULT)**  
**do not treat your children in a way that**  
**makes them become angry (UST)**

“do not make your children angry” or “do not cause your children to be angry”

**Instead (ULT)**

**Instead (UST)**

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Fathers provoking their children to anger is in contrast to raising their children in discipline and instruction. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And [fathers](#), do not [provoke](#) your [children to anger](#). Instead, raise them in [the discipline](#) and [instruction of the Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [As for you who are fathers](#), do not [treat your children in a way that makes them become angry](#). Instead, bring them up well by [instructing them](#) and [by disciplining them in the manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do](#).

**raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord (ULT)**  
**bring them up well by instructing them and by disciplining them in the**  
**manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do (UST)**

The abstract nouns **discipline** and **instruction** can be expressed as verbs. Alternate translation: “teach them to become adults by making sure that they know and do what the Lord wants them to do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [fathers](#)
- [do...provoke...to anger](#)
- [children](#)
- [the discipline](#)
- [instruction](#)
- [of the Lord](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [As for you who are fathers](#)
- [treat...in a way that makes them become angry](#)
- [children](#)
- [instructing them](#)
- [by disciplining them](#)
- [in the manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do](#)

## Ephesians 6:5

### fear and trembling (ULT) very respectfully (UST)

The phrase **fear and trembling** uses two similar ideas to emphasize the importance of honoring their masters. Alternate translation: “with deep respect” (See: [Doublet](#))

### and trembling (ULT) very respectfully (UST)

Here, **trembling** is an exaggeration used to emphasize how important it is that slaves obey their masters. Alternate translation: “and deep respect” or “as though you were shaking with fear” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### in honesty of your heart (ULT) and sincerely (UST)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person’s mind or intentions. Alternate translation: “with honesty” or “with sincerity” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in honesty (ULT) and sincerely (UST)

The word **honesty** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “honestly” or “sincerely” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### as to Christ (ULT) just as you obey the Messiah (UST)

To make this clear, you may want to include the verb here: “as you obey Christ.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Slaves](#)
- [obey](#)
- [masters](#)
- [the flesh](#)
- [fear](#)
- [trembling](#)
- [of...heart](#)
- [as](#)
- [to Christ](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [As for you who are slaves](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [Slaves](#), [obey](#) your [masters](#) according to [the flesh](#) with [fear](#) and [trembling](#), in honesty of your [heart](#), [as to Christ](#),

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [As for you who are slaves](#), [very respectfully and sincerely obey](#) those [who are your masters here on the earth](#), [just as you obey](#) the [Messiah](#).

- very respectfully
- very respectfully
- and sincerely
- obey
- who are your masters
- here on the earth
- just as you obey
- Messiah

## Ephesians 6:6

### but (ULT) Instead (UST)

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Obeying our masters as men-pleasers is in contrast to obeying them because we are slaves of Christ. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### as...slaves of Christ (ULT) as...you were slaves of the Messiah (UST)

“as though your earthly master were Christ himself”

### from the soul (ULT) enthusiastically (UST)

Here, **soul** is a metonym for “attitudes” or “intentions.” Alternate translation: “wholeheartedly” or “enthusiastically” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> not with eye-service [as](#) men-pleasers, but [as slaves of Christ](#), doing the [will of God](#) from [the soul](#),

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Obey them not only when they are watching you, [as](#) people do who only care about appearing to work hard. Instead, [work as though you were slaves of the Messiah](#), doing [enthusiastically what God wants you to do](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [slaves](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [will of God](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the soul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [as](#)
- [work as though](#) (2)
- [you were slaves](#)
- [of the Messiah](#)
- [enthusiastically](#)
- [what...God...wants you to do](#)
- [God](#)

## Ephesians 6:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- serving
- as
- to...Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- Serve your masters
- as though you are serving
- Lord Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> serving with a good attitude, as to the Lord and not to men,

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Serve your masters willingly, as though you are serving the Lord Jesus rather than people.

## Ephesians 6:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- knowing
- good
- he will receive
- the Lord
- slave
- free

### Translation Words - UST

- Do this because you know
- the Lord Jesus
- will reward
- good deeds
- a slave
- a free person

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> knowing that each person, if he does something good, this he will receive from the Lord, whether slave or free.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Do this because you know that the Lord Jesus will reward each person for whatever good deeds that person has done. It makes no difference whether that person was a slave or a free person.

## Ephesians 6:9

**do the same to them (ULT)**  
**just like your slaves should serve you well, in**  
**the same way you must treat them well (UST)**

Here, **the same** refers back to “if he does something good” from (Ephesians 6:8). Alternate translation: “you also must treat your slaves well” or “just as slaves must do good to their masters, you also must do good to your slaves” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**You know that the Master, both theirs and yours, is in heaven**

“You know that Christ is the Master of both slaves and their masters, and that he is in heaven”

**there is no favoritism with him (ULT)**  
**he judges all people equally whether their position is high or low (UST)**

“he judges everyone the same way”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [masters](#)
- [Master](#)
- [You know](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [favoritism](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [masters](#)
- [Lord...Lord](#)
- [Do not forget](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [he judges all people equally whether their position is high or low](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And [masters](#), do the same to them. Stop using threats. [You know](#) that the [Master](#), both theirs and yours, is in [heaven](#), and there is no [favoritism](#) with him.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> As for you who are [masters](#), just like your slaves should serve you well, in the same way you must treat them well. Stop threatening them. [Do not forget](#) that the one who is both their [Lord](#) and your [Lord](#) is in [heaven](#) and [he judges all people equally whether their position is high or low](#).

## Ephesians 6:10

### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives instructions to make believers strong in this battle we are in for God.

### the force of his strength (ULT) he...is immeasurably strong (UST)

These two words are very similar in meaning. Together, they reinforce each other. Alternate translation: "his great power" See how you translated this phrase near the end of [Ephesians 1:19](#) (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- be strong
- of...strength
- in the Lord
- the Lord
- force

### Translation Words - UST

- rely completely...to strengthen you spiritually
- is immeasurably strong
- on the Lord Jesus
- the Lord Jesus
- is immeasurably strong

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Finally, [be strong in the Lord](#) and in the [force](#) of his [strength](#).

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Finally, [rely completely on the Lord Jesus to strengthen you spiritually](#) because he [is immeasurably strong](#).



## Ephesians 6:11

**Put on the whole armor of God, to enable you to stand against the scheming of the devil (ULT)**

**Just as a soldier puts on all of his armor to be ready to fight his enemy, you should use every spiritual resource that God provides for you so that you may successfully resist the devil when he cleverly schemes against you (UST)**

In this metaphor, Paul pictures the spiritual resources that **God** gives to all Christians as a soldier's **armor**. Alternate translation: "Just as a soldier puts on armor to protect himself from enemy attacks, use all of God's resources to stand firmly against the devil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the scheming (ULT)**  
**when he cleverly schemes against you (UST)**

"the tricky plans"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [whole armor](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of...devil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all of his armor...every spiritual resource](#)
- [that God provides for you](#)
- [devil](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Put on the [whole armor of God](#), to enable you to stand against the scheming of the [devil](#).

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Just as a soldier puts on [all of his armor](#) to be ready to fight his enemy, you should use [every spiritual resource that God provides for you](#) so that you may successfully resist the [devil](#) when he cleverly schemes against you.

## Ephesians 6:12

### For (ULT) Remember that (UST)

The connecting word **For** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that we are in a struggle against spiritual forces of darkness. The result is that we should put on the whole armor of God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### blood and flesh (ULT) other human beings (UST)

This expression refers to people, not spirits who do not have human bodies. Alternate translation: “human beings” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### but (ULT) Instead (UST)

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. People made of flesh and blood are in contrast to spiritual forces. (See: [Connect – Contrast Relationship](#))

### against the world-controllers (ULT) to rule over the people doing evil things (UST)

Here it is implied that **the world-controllers** refers to powerful spiritual beings. Alternate translation: “against the powerful spiritual beings that rule over people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### of this darkness (ULT) in this evil time (UST)

Here, **darkness** is a metaphor for things that are evil. Alternate translation: “during this present evil time” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- flesh
- rulers
- authorities
- of...darkness
- spiritual forces
- of evil
- heavenly places

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For our struggle is not against **blood** and **flesh**, but against the **rulers**, against the **authorities**, against the world-controllers of this **darkness**, against the **spiritual forces of evil** in the **heavenly places**.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Remember that we are not fighting against **other human beings**. Instead, we are fighting against the **demons who have authority** to rule over the people doing evil things in this **evil time**, that is, against the **evil spirits** who live in the **air**.

## Translation Words - UST

- other human beings
- other human beings
- demons
- who have authority
- in...evil time
- evil
- spirits
- air

## Ephesians 6:13

**Because of this, put on the whole armor of God (ULT)**

**That is why you must use well all of the spiritual resources that God has given you, like a soldier who puts on all of his armor (UST)**

Christians should use the protective resources **God** gives them in fighting the devil in the same way that a soldier puts on **armor** to protect himself against his enemies. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Because of this (ULT)**  
**That is why (UST)**

The connecting phrase **Because of this** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that we are in a battle against evil spiritual forces. The result is that we should put on the whole armor of God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

**so that you may be able to withstand in the evil day (ULT)**  
**If you do that, you will be able to resist the evil spirits when they attack you...able (UST)**

The word **withstand** means to successfully resist something. Alternate translation: “so that you may be able to resist when evil attacks you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so that you may be able to withstand (ULT)**  
**If you do that, you will be able to resist...able (UST)**

It may be helpful to state explicitly what believers are to withstand. Alternate translation: “so that you may be able to withstand the attacks of the devil” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**so that (ULT)**  
**If you do that (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of putting on the whole armor of God is to be able to withstand the attacks of the spiritual forces of darkness. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- whole armor
- of God
- evil
- day

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Because of this, put on the [whole armor of God](#), so that you may be able to withstand in the [evil day](#), and, having done everything, to stand.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> That is why you must use well all of the [spiritual resources that God has given you](#), like a soldier who puts on all of [his armor](#). If you do that, you will be able to resist the [evil spirits when they attack you](#). You will also be ready for when they attack you again and able to continue to live well for God.

## Translation Words - UST

- spiritual resources...his armor
- that God has given you
- evil spirits
- when they attack you

## Ephesians 6:14

### Stand, therefore (ULT)

**You must be ready to resist the devil and his evil spirits...To do that (UST)**

Here the word **Stand** represents taking a position on what is right and true and successfully resisting forces that try to make the believer compromise that position. See how you translated “stand firm” in [Ephesians 6:13](#). “So resist evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### therefore (ULT)

**You must be ready to resist the devil and his evil spirits...To do that (UST)**

The connecting word **therefore** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that we believers have put on our spiritual armor. The result is that we will stand and resist the evil spiritual forces. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. (See: [Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

### having girded up your loins with the truth (ULT)

**just as soldiers must always be ready to resist the enemy...keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you (UST)**

In this metaphor, **truth** is compared to a soldier’s belt. Truth holds everything together for a believer just as a belt holds the clothing of a soldier together. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the truth (ULT)

**keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you (UST)**

The word **truth** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “what is true” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### having put on the breastplate of righteousness (ULT)

**continue to act righteously. This will protect you like a soldier’s armor protects his chest (UST)**

In this metaphor, **righteousness** is compared to a soldier’s **breastplate**. Just as soldiers put on a breastplate to protect themselves from enemy attacks, believers should behave in a righteous way to protect themselves from spiritual attacks. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of righteousness (ULT)

**act righteously (UST)**

The word **righteousness** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “the right way to live” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Stand, therefore, having girded up your loins with [the truth](#) and having put on the [breastplate of righteousness](#),

### UST

<sup>14</sup> You must be ready to resist the devil and his evil spirits just as soldiers must always be ready to resist the enemy. To do that, [keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you](#). Also, continue to [act righteously](#). [This will protect you like a soldier’s armor protects his chest](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- the truth
- breastplate
- of righteousness

## Translation Words - UST

- keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you
- act righteously
- This will protect you like a soldier's armor protects his chest

## Ephesians 6:15

**having shod your feet with the readiness of the gospel of peace (ULT)**

**Just like a soldier who keeps his boots on...be ready to go anywhere you are needed for the sake of the good news that tells people how to be at peace with God (UST)**

In this metaphor, **the gospel of peace** is compared to a soldier's sandals. Just as a soldier wears sturdy footwear to give him solid footing and enable him to march long distances, the believer must have solid knowledge of the gospel of peace and be ready to go where the Lord sends him to proclaim it. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and having shod your feet with the readiness of the [gospel of peace](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Just like a soldier who keeps his boots on, be ready to go anywhere you are needed [for the sake of the good news that tells people how to be at peace with God](#).

**of peace (ULT)**

**that tells people how to be at peace with God (UST)**

The word **peace** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "that makes everything good between people and God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [of...gospel](#)
- [of peace](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [for the sake of the good news](#)
- [that tells people how to be at peace with God](#)



## Ephesians 6:16

**In everything take up the shield of the faith (ULT)**

**Just as a soldier holds up a shield...you must keep trusting firmly in the Lord at all times (UST)**

In this metaphor, faith is compared to a soldier's **shield**. Just as a soldier uses a shield to protect himself from enemy attacks, the believer must use the **faith** that God gives for protection when the devil attacks. See the UST (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of the faith (ULT)**

**keep trusting firmly in the Lord (UST)**

The word **faith** is an abstract noun that can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "that represents how much you trust in the Lord" See the UST (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the flaming arrows of the evil one (ULT)**

**the flaming arrows that his enemy shoots at him...of the things that your enemy, Satan, the evil one, will try to do to harm you spiritually (UST)**

The attacks of the devil against a believer are like **flaming arrows** shot at a soldier by an enemy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [shield](#)
- [of...faith](#)
- [to extinguish](#)
- [of...evil one](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [shield](#)
- [to stop](#)
- [his enemy...your enemy, Satan, the evil one](#)
- [keep trusting firmly in the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> In everything take up the [shield](#) of the [faith](#), by which you will be able [to extinguish](#) all the flaming arrows of the [evil one](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Just as a soldier holds up a [shield to stop](#) the flaming arrows that [his enemy](#) shoots at him, you must [keep trusting firmly in the Lord](#) at all times. That will protect you from all of the things that [your enemy, Satan, the evil one](#), will try to do to harm you spiritually.

## Ephesians 6:17

**take the helmet of salvation (ULT)**  
**as a soldier relies on a helmet to protect his head, rely on the fact that God has saved you...uses...use (UST)**

The **salvation** that God gives protects the believer's mind just as a **helmet** protects the head of a soldier. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of salvation (ULT)**  
**the fact that God has saved you (UST)**

The word **salvation** is an abstract noun that can be translated with a verb. Alternate Translation: "that represents the fact that God has saved you" See the UST (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God (ULT)**  
**just as a soldier...a sword to defeat his enemies...the weapon that God's Spirit gives you, which is the message that comes from God (UST)**

In this metaphor, God's message is compared to a soldier's **sword**. Just as soldiers use a sword to fight and defeat their enemy, so a believer can use God's message in the Bible to fight against the devil. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of salvation](#)
- [sword](#)
- [of...Spirit](#)
- [the word of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the fact that God has saved you](#)
- [just as a soldier...a sword to defeat his enemies...the weapon](#)
- [that God's Spirit gives you](#)
- [the message that comes from God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And take the helmet [of salvation](#) and the [sword](#) of the [Spirit](#), which is the [word of God](#).

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Also, as a soldier relies on a helmet to protect his head, rely on [the fact that God has saved you](#). And [just as a soldier uses a sword to defeat his enemies](#), use [the weapon that God's Spirit gives you](#), which is [the message that comes from God](#).

## Ephesians 6:18

### With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit

“Pray at all times in the Spirit as you pray and make specific requests”

#### to this end (ULT)

#### To be most effective (UST)

The connecting phrase **to this end** marks a goal or purpose relationship. The goal is what was just mentioned: to pray at all times in the Spirit. In order to do that, believers must be watchful and persevere in making requests for all the saints. Alternate Translation: “for this reason” or “in order to do that” (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> With every [prayer](#) and [request](#), [pray](#) at all [times](#) in [the Spirit](#). And to this end, be watchful with all [perseverance](#) and [requests](#) for all the [saints](#),

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> [Whenever you pray to God](#) and [request things from him](#), [always let God’s Spirit direct you in how you pray and what you pray for](#). To be most effective, keep watching to see what God is doing, [and be persistent as you continue to pray](#) for all of [God’s people](#).

### be watchful with all perseverance and requests for all the saints (ULT) keep watching to see what God is doing, and be persistent as you continue to pray for all of God’s people (UST)

The word **perseverance** is an abstract noun that can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: “persevere in being alert, and pray for all God’s holy people” or “pray with constant alertness for all the believers” See the UST (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [prayer](#)
- [request](#)
- [pray](#)
- [requests](#)
- [times](#)
- [the Spirit](#)
- [perseverance](#)
- [saints](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Whenever you pray to God](#)
- [request things from him](#)
- [in how you pray and what you pray for](#)
- [as you continue to pray](#)
- [always](#)
- [let God’s Spirit direct you](#)
- [and be persistent](#)
- [God’s people](#)

## Ephesians 6:19

### Connecting Statement:

In closing this letter, Paul asks his readers to pray for his boldness in telling the gospel while he is in prison and he says that he is sending Tychicus to comfort them.

### so that a message might be given to me (ULT) that God would tell me what I should say (UST)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “that God might give me the word” or “God might give me the message” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### so that (ULT) that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of the believers praying for Paul is to enable him to preach the gospel boldly. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### I open my mouth (ULT) I speak (UST)

This is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: “I speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to make known](#)
- [boldness](#)
- [mystery](#)
- [of...gospel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in order that I may...tell others...about the Messiah](#)
- [boldly](#)
- [good news](#)
- [that people did not know before](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> and for me, so that a message might be given to me when I open my mouth, [to make known](#) with [boldness](#) the [mystery](#) of the [gospel](#)

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Pray for me, also, that God would tell me what I should say whenever I speak, [in order that I may boldly tell others](#) the [good news about the Messiah that people did not know before](#).

## Ephesians 6:20

**for which I am an ambassador in chains (ULT)**  
**It is because I have been telling people about the Messiah that I am now representing him here in prison (UST)**

The phrase **in chains** is a metonym for being in prison. Alternate translation: “because of which I am now in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**so that in it I may speak boldly, as it is necessary for me to speak (ULT)**  
**Pray that as I continue to tell others about the Messiah, I may speak boldly because that is how I ought to speak (UST)**

The word “pray” is understood from verse 18. Alternate translation: “pray that whenever I teach the gospel, I will speak it as boldly as I should” or “pray that I may speak the gospel as boldly as I should” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**so that (ULT)**  
**Pray that (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of the believers praying for Paul is to enable him to preach the gospel boldly even though he is in chains. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**in it (ULT)**  
**as I continue to tell others about the Messiah (UST)**

Here, **it** refers back to the “message” in verse 19 that Paul wants to speak. If it is clearer in your language, you can repeat the word “message” here. Alternate translation: “in my message” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I am an ambassador
- I may speak boldly
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- that I am now representing him
- I may speak boldly
- because

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> (for which I am an ambassador in chains), so that in it I may speak boldly, as it is necessary for me to speak.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> It is because I have been telling people about the Messiah that I am now representing him here in prison. Pray that as I continue to tell others about the Messiah, I may speak boldly because that is how I ought to speak.

## Ephesians 6:21

### so that (ULT) in order that (UST)

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Paul sending Tychicus to Ephesus was to tell the Ephesian believers what was happening to Paul. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### Tychicus (ULT) Tychicus (UST)

Tychicus was one of several men who served with Paul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### brother (ULT) a fellow believer (UST)

Paul speaks of Tychicus as if he were a **brother** to all the other believers who were in God's spiritual family. Alternate translation: "fellow believer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- may know
- will make known
- Tychicus
- beloved
- brother
- faithful
- in the Lord
- the Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- may know about
- will tell
- Tychicus
- a fellow believer
- whom we all love very much
- the Lord Jesus
- the Lord Jesus
- faithfully

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But so that you also [may know](#) the things concerning me, how I am doing, [Tychicus](#), the [beloved brother](#) and [faithful](#) servant [in the Lord](#), [will make known](#) to you everything,

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Now in order that you [may know about](#) what is happening with me and what I am doing, [Tychicus will tell](#) you everything that is happening here. He is [a fellow believer whom we all love very much](#), and he serves [the Lord Jesus faithfully](#).

## Ephesians 6:22

**your hearts may be encouraged (ULT)**  
**I want him to comfort and encourage you (UST)**

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for people's inner beings. Alternate translation: "he may encourage you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**so that (ULT)**  
**That (UST)**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Paul sending Tychicus to the Ephesians is to encourage their hearts and to let them know what was happening to Paul and his companions. (See: [Connect – Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I have sent
- you may know
- hearts
- may be encouraged

### Translation Words - UST

- I am sending...with this letter
- I want you to know
- I want him to comfort and encourage
- you

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> whom I have sent to you for this very purpose, so that you may know the things about us and your hearts may be encouraged.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> That is the reason that I am sending him to you with this letter; I want you to know how we are, and I want him to comfort and encourage you.

## Ephesians 6:23

### Connecting Statement:

Paul closes his letter to the Ephesian believers with a blessing of peace and grace on all believers who love Christ.

### Peace to the brothers (ULT) may give to all of you fellow believers a peaceful spirit (UST)

**Peace** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "May the brothers have a peaceful spirit" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### to the brothers (ULT) to all of you fellow believers (UST)

Paul speaks of the other believers as if they were **brothers** to all of the other believers who were in God's spiritual family. Alternate translation: "to the fellow believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### love (ULT) enable you to love each other (UST)

The word **love** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "may you love one another" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### with faith (ULT) and to continue to trust in God (UST)

The word **faith** is an abstract noun that can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "as you trust in the Lord" See the UST (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peace
- to...brothers
- love
- faith
- God the Father
- the Lord
- Jesus
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- I pray that God...our Father
- the Lord
- Jesus
- the Messiah

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Peace to the brothers, and love with faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> I pray that God our Father and the Lord Jesus the Messiah may give to all of you fellow believers a peaceful spirit and enable you to love each other and to continue to trust in God.



- may give....a peaceful spirit
- fellow believers
- enable you to love each other
- and to continue to trust in God

## Ephesians 6:24

**Grace be with (ULT)**  
**I pray that God will continue to act graciously**  
**among all people (UST)**

The word **Grace** is an abstract noun that can be translated with an adverb. Alternate translation: "May God act graciously to" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**with incorruptibility (ULT)**  
**steadfastly (UST)**

The word **incorruptibility** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "in a way that no one is able to corrupt" or "so much that no one can make them stop loving him" See the UST (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [Grace](#) be with all those [who love](#) our [Lord Jesus Christ](#) with incorruptibility.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [I pray that God will continue to act graciously among](#) all people who steadfastly [love](#) our [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Grace](#)
- [who love](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [I pray that God will continue to act graciously among](#)
- [who...love](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 22**

# Abstract Nouns

## Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:8](#); [3:19](#); [3:21](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:7](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:24](#); [4:25](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [5:6](#); [5:18](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#))

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:3; 1:11; 1:13; 1:18; 1:21; 2:5; 2:8; 2:11; 2:20; 2:22; 3:3; 3:5; 3:9; 3:10; 3:15; 3:19; 4:4; 4:7; 4:18; 4:21; 4:23; 4:30; 5:3; 6:19](#))



# Apostrophe

## Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

## Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

## Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

**Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

**As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:14](#))

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

- (1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
- (2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**  
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:1](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [3:18](#); [5:28](#); [6:5](#); [6:9](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:20](#))

## Connect – Contrast Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

### Contrast Relationship

#### Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

There are two contrasts here, marked with “however” and “but.” The first contrast shows that even though David asked to find a place for God’s house, it was Solomon who built it. Then there is another contrast because, even though Solomon built a house for God, God does not live in houses that people build.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
- (2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
- (3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

- (2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

- (3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:4](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [4:15](#); [4:20](#); [4:28](#); [4:29](#); [4:32](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:13](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:27](#); [5:29](#); [6:4](#); [6:6](#); [6:12](#))

## Connect – Goal (Purpose) Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

### Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

#### Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison.**  
(Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian.** (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes.** Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean,** and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened,** which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)



The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with “and.” Then the word “so” marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
- (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!” (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!”

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

- (2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17bULT)

“... keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “... keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance.**

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:7](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:15](#); [3:10](#); [3:16](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [4:28](#); [4:29](#); [5:26](#); [5:27](#); [6:3](#); [6:13](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#))

## Connect – Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

### Reason-and-Result Relationships

#### Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward – “I did Y because I wanted X to happen.” But usually it is looking backward – “X happened, and so I did Y.” Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are “because,” “so,” “therefore,” and “for.” Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!  
(Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul – that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.  
(Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

“Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
- (2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.
- (3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

- (1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.
- (2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.
- (3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

- (1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.
- (2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.
- (3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

**Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

- (1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.
- (2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.
- (3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:15; 1:17; 2:8; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:14; 2:18; 2:19; 3:1; 3:13; 3:14; 3:18; 3:19; 4:1; 4:8; 4:17; 4:18; 4:25; 5:1; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:14; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 5:23; 5:30; 5:31; 6:1; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

## Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was not done without an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

## Examples From the Bible

... in order **not** to be **un**fruitful. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

“For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

“... so that they may be fruitful.”

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **unpunished**. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

“Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

“All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#))

# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#); [1:8](#); [1:19](#); [1:21](#); [2:1](#); [2:19](#); [3:10](#); [5:19](#); [5:27](#); [6:5](#); [6:10](#))



# Ellipsis

## Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[<sup>1</sup>] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

## Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples From the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?* ([^1])

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)



He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:15](#))

# Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

## Description

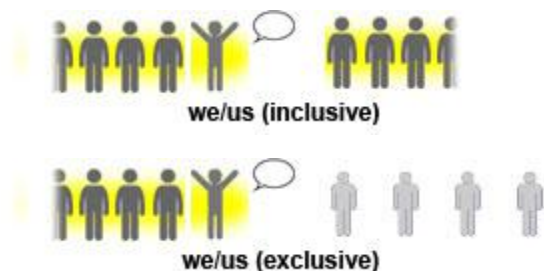
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

## Examples From the Bible

### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with **us**—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [2:14](#); [2:18](#); [3:20](#))

# Forms of You

## Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

## Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” – Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Introduction to Ephesians](#); [Ephesians 1:1](#); [5:14](#); [6:1](#))

# Hendiadys

## Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

## Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

## Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun “glory” can be changed to the adjective “glorious” to make it clear that Jesus’ appearing is what we hope for. Also, “Jesus Christ” can be moved to the front of the phrase and “great God and Savior” put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.



Next we recommend you learn about:

[Doublet](#)

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:12](#))

# How to Translate Names

## Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

## Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

## Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** <sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to Ephesians](#); [Ephesians 6:21](#))

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

## Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
  - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
  - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.



The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.  
or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:16](#); [6:5](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

■ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

■ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

■ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

■ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

■ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

■ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

■ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

■ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

■ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

■ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

■ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

■ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:6](#); [5:6](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
- (2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!  
**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot**

**speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:21](#))

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:16](#))



## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God,  
"the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.  
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:19](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page

in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery – Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**”  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

# Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery – Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:18](#); [1:22](#); [1:23](#); [Notes](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:10](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:22](#); [4:24](#); [4:25](#); [4:30](#); [4:31](#); [5:2](#); [5:5](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:11](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [5:20](#); [5:23](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [5:27](#); [5:30](#); [Notes](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:21](#); [6:23](#))



# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”  
or:  
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery – Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:7](#); [1:18](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:16](#); [3:13](#); [4:26](#); [5:16](#); [5:19](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#))

# Nominal Adjectives

## Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds.  
(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

## Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:20](#))

# Predictive Past

## Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;  
their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

## Examples From the Bible

Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;  
and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

## Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
- (2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
- (3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:6](#))

# Pronouns

## Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

## Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

### Person

- First Person – The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person – The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person – Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

### Number

- Singular – one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural – more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual – two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

### Gender

- Masculine – he
- Feminine – she
- Neuter – it

## Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:20](#))



# Pronouns – When to Use Them

## Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

## Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom “he” in the second sentence refers to.

Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **he** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:12](#))

# Simile

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

## Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) – This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) – If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:1; 5:8](#))

## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown\]\]](#)

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) – Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) – Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:20](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]



I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:14; 6:12](#))

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Ephesians](#))

# Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

## Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**.” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

**I love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

**No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human “father” and “son.” In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”

(2) If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:13](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 25**

## admonish, warned, aware

### Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2094, H5749, G3560, G3867, G5537

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:4](#))

## adoption, adopt, adopted

### Definition:

The terms “adopt” and “adoption” refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses “adoption” and “adopt” in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase “experience adoption as sons” could be translated as “be adopted by God as his children” or “become God’s (spiritual) children.”
- To “wait for the adoption of sons” could be translated as “look forward to becoming God’s children” or “wait expectantly for God to receive as children.”
- The phrase “adopt them” could be translated as “receive them as his own children” or “make them his own (spiritual) children.”

(See also: [heir](#), [inherit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 1:5
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Romans 8:14-15
- Romans 8:23
- Romans 9:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5206

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:5](#))



## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:11](#))

## age, aged

### Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G165, G1074

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:21](#); [2:2](#); [2:7](#); [3:9](#))

## ambassador, representative

### Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. The word is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: messenger)

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 6:20
- Luke 14:31-33
- Luke 19:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3887, H4135, H4136, H4397, H6735, H6737, G4243

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:20](#))

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H543, G281

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:21](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:31](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#))

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), [Paul](#), the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles**’ money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles**’ teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [2:20](#); [3:5](#); [4:11](#))

## armor, armory

### Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [save](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 6:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 4:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:11](#); [6:13](#))



## asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 4:14
- Acts 7:60
- Daniel 12:2
- Psalms 44:23
- Romans 13:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:14](#))

## authority

### Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: king, [ruler](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:21](#); [2:2](#); [3:10](#); [6:12](#))

## baptize, baptized, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:38
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 9:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:7** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:5** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G907

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:5](#))

## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, [fruit](#), iniquity, report, sheep, [strength](#), testimony, testimony)

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:2](#))

# believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

## Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), Christian, disciple, [faith](#), trust)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0540, G0543, G0544, G0569, G0570, G0571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:13](#); [1:19](#))

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Solomon 1:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:1](#); [6:21](#))



## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), vow)

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:3](#))

## blameless

### Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:10
- 1 Thessalonians 3:11-13
- 2 Peter 3:14
- Colossians 1:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 2:15
- Philippians 3:6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5352, H5355, H8535, G273, G274, G298, G299, G338, G410, G423

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#); [5:27](#))

## blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:31](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”

- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:3](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:7](#); [2:13](#); [6:12](#))

## boast, boastful

### Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- James 3:14
- James 4:15-17
- Psalms 44:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1740, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:9](#))



## body

### Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), hand; face; loins; [righthand](#); tongue)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:23](#); [2:16](#); [3:6](#); [4:4](#); [4:12](#); [4:16](#); [5:23](#); [5:30](#))

## **bold, boldness, emboldened**

### **Definition:**

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [good news](#), [redeem](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 2:28
- 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- Acts 4:13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:12](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#))

## bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:14](#))

## breastplate, breastpiece

### Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: [armor](#), high priest, pierce, priest, [temple](#), warrior)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17
- Revelation 9:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833, H8302, G2382

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:14](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G0080, G0081, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:21](#); [6:23](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:18](#); [4:1](#); [4:4](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, seed, [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:1](#); [6:4](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, [Christ](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#))

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), David, [Jesus](#), anoint)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:20](#); [3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:6](#); [3:8](#); [3:11](#); [3:17](#); [3:19](#); [3:21](#); [4:7](#); [4:12](#); [4:13](#); [4:15](#); [4:20](#); [4:32](#); [5:2](#); [5:5](#); [5:14](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [5:29](#); [5:32](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#))

## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, [believe](#), Christian)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:22](#); [3:10](#); [3:21](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [5:27](#); [5:29](#); [5:32](#))

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, [covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48

- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:11](#))



## **citizen, citizenship**

### **Definition:**

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as “inhabitant” or “official resident.”
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called “citizens” of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God’s kingdom.

(See: kingdom, [Paul](#), province, Rome)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 3:3
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:12](#); [2:19](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:26](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G0294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:24](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:15](#); [6:2](#))

## confidence, confident

### Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe](#), [bold](#), [faithful](#), [hope](#), trust)

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:12](#))

## cornerstone

### Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:11
- Ephesians 2:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:20](#))

## corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

### Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:22; 4:29](#))



## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:22](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:12](#))

## create, created, creation, creator

### Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:10](#); [3:9](#); [4:24](#))

## cross

### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:17
- Colossians 2:15
- Galatians 6:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 9:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philipians 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:2** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4716

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:16](#))

# darkness

## Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), kingdom, [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:18](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [6:12](#))

# day

## Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, last day)

## Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:30](#); [5:16](#); [6:13](#))



## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:14](#); [4:22](#); [5:6](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

## 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

## 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G0336, G0337, G0520, G0599, G0615, G0622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:20](#); [Notes](#); [2:1](#); [2:5](#); [5:14](#))

## discipline, self-discipline

### Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 6:4
- Hebrews 12:5
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4148, G1468

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:4](#))

## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 3:7
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 6:49
- Psalms 89:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:7** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:2](#); [5:6](#))

## doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge

### Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 3:16-17
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3948, G1319, G1322, G2085

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:14](#))

## dominion

### Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:21](#))

## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:18](#))



## earth, land

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [world](#), [heaven](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:10](#); [3:15](#); [4:9](#); [6:3](#))

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:19](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#))

## Ephesus, Ephesian

### Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asia, [Paul](#), Timothy)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 19:1
- Ephesians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5 General Notes](#))

# evangelist

## Definition:

An “evangelist” is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of “evangelist” is “someone who preaches the good news.”
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God’s kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called “evangelists.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “evangelist” could be translated as “someone who preaches the good news” or “teacher of the good news” or “person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)” or “good news proclaimer.”

(See also: [good news](#), [spirit](#), [gift](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:5
- Ephesians 4:11-13

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2099

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:11](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.

- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G0092, G0113, G0459, G0932, G0987, G0988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:16](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#))



## exhort, exhortation

### Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 1 Timothy 5:2
- Luke 3:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:1](#))

# faith

## Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:15](#); [Notes](#); [2:8](#); [3:12](#); [3:17](#); [Notes](#); [4:5](#); [4:13](#); [6:16](#); [6:23](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [6:21](#))

## family, household

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, [ancestor](#), house)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:15](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), marvel, [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:33](#); [6:5](#))

## filled with the Holy Spirit

### Definition:

The term “filled with the Holy Spirit” is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God’s will.

- The expression “filled with” is an expression that often means “controlled by.”
- People are “filled with the Holy Spirit” when they follow the Holy Spirit’s leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “empowered by the Holy Spirit” or “controlled by the Holy Spirit.” But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as “he was filled with the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “he was living fully by the Spirit’s power” or “he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit” or “the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely.”
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression “live by the Spirit,” but “filled with the Holy Spirit” emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:31
- Acts 5:17
- Acts 6:8-9
- Luke 1:15
- Luke 1:39-41
- Luke 4:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:18](#))

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2 General Notes](#); [2:3](#); [2:11](#); [2:14](#); [5:29](#); [5:31](#); [6:5](#); [6:12](#))



## fool, foolish, folly

### Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:4](#); [5:17](#))

## forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

## Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:7](#); [4:32](#); [Notes](#))

## found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#); [2:20](#); [3:17](#))

## free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:8](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, [Holy Spirit](#), vine, womb)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:9](#); [5:11](#))

# generation

## Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

## Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:7
- Mark 8:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:5](#); [3:21](#))



# Gentile

## Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), Jacob, Jew)

## Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:11](#); [3:1](#); [3:6](#); [3:8](#); [4:17](#))

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:8](#); [3:7](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, exalt, [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:6](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [3:13](#); [3:16](#); [3:21](#); [5:27](#))

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [1:17](#); [2:4](#); [2:8](#); [2:10](#); [2:16](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [3:2](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:19](#); [4:18](#); [4:24](#); [4:32](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [6:6](#); [6:11](#); [6:13](#))

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:8** “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”
- **50:10** “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:17](#); [2:18](#); [3:14](#); [4:6](#); [5:20](#); [6:23](#))



## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:5](#))

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/ message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:13](#); [2:17](#); [3:6](#); [3:8](#); [6:15](#); [6:19](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), prosper, [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

• Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:5](#); [2:10](#); [4:28](#); [4:29](#); [5:9](#); [6:8](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:2](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [3:2](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [4:7](#); [4:29](#); [6:24](#))

## hard, harden, hardness

### Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:18](#))



## head

### Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: chief, grain)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:22](#); [4:15](#); [5:23](#))

## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:18](#); [3:17](#); [4:18](#); [5:19](#); [6:5](#); [6:22](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:3](#); [1:10](#); [1:20](#); [2:6](#); [3:10](#); [3:15](#); [4:10](#); [6:9](#); [6:12](#))

# heir

## Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, [inherit](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:6](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**.”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:13](#); [2:18](#); [2:22](#); [3:5](#); [3:16](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:30](#); [5:18](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6



- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#); [2:21](#); [3:5](#); [4:24](#); [5:27](#))

# honor

## Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:2](#))

## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:12](#); [1:18](#); [2:12](#); [4:4](#))

## household

### Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:10
- Galatians 6:10
- Genesis 7:1
- Genesis 34:19
- John 4:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 4:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:19](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G0858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:2](#))

## imitate, imitator

### Definition:

The terms “imitate” and “imitator” refers to copying someone else by acting exactly like that person does.

- Christians are taught to imitate Jesus Christ by obeying God and loving others, just as Jesus did.
- The apostle Paul told the early church to imitate him, just as he imitated Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “imitate” could be translated as “do the same things as” or “follow his example.”
- The expression “be imitators of God” could be translated as “be people who act like God does” or “be people who do the kinds of things God does.”
- “You became imitators of us” could be translated as “You followed our example” or “You are doing the same kinds of godly things that you saw us do.”

### Bible References:

- 3 John 1:11
- Matthew 23:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H310, H6213, G1096, G2596, G3401, G3402, G4160

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:1](#))

## in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

### Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1519, G2962, G5547

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:15](#); [1:20](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [2:21](#); [3:6](#); [3:11](#); [3:21](#); [4:1](#); [4:17](#); [4:21](#); [4:32](#); [5:8](#); [6:1](#); [6:10](#); [6:21](#))

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), Canaan, Promised Land, [possess](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820



(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:14](#); [1:18](#); [Notes](#); [5:5](#))

# Israel, Israelites

## Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** ***its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.***
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:12](#))

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, [kingdom of God](#), Mary, [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."

- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [2:20](#); [3:1](#); [3:6](#); [3:11](#); [3:21](#); [4:21](#); [5:20](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#))

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”

- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:5](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:9](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#); [3:10](#); [3:19](#); [4:13](#); [5:5](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:19](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#))

# labor, laborer, work, hard work

## Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:28](#))

## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:15](#))

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

## 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

## 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:18](#); [Notes](#))

## light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

### Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [wisdom](#), [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G0681, G0796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:13](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, image, perish)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#); [2:3](#); [3:5](#); [4:4](#); [4:17](#); [4:21](#); [4:32](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:15](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [5:28](#); [5:29](#); [5:33](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:20](#))



## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G0203, G0634, G0962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [2:21](#); [3:11](#); [4:1](#); [4:5](#); [4:17](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [5:17](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [5:22](#); [6:1](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:21](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#))

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Solomon 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:15](#); [2:4](#); [3:17](#); [3:19](#); [4:2](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [5:2](#); [5:25](#); [5:28](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#))

# lust, lustful, passions, desires

## Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, [false god](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H185, H310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1937, G1939, G2237, G3715, G3806

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:3](#); [4:22](#))

## manager, steward, stewardship

### Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:4-5
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 8:3
- Luke 16:2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 1:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G2012, G3621, G3623

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:10](#); [3:2](#); [3:9](#))

## member, body parts

### Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), Pharisee, council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:2
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G1010, G3196, G3609

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:25; 5:30](#))

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, [forgive](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:4](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:10](#))

# mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

## Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

## Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

## Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:3](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#))

## **multiply, multiplied, multiplication**

### **Definition:**

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:8](#))

## mystery, hidden truth

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 4:2-4
- Ephesians 6:19-20
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:9](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:9](#); [5:32](#); [6:19](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:21](#); [5:20](#))

## neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26-28
- Ephesians 4:25-27
- Galatians 5:14
- James 2:8
- John 9:8-9
- Luke 1:58
- Matthew 5:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:25](#))

## obey, keep

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term “keep” means “to obey.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), kingdom, law)

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** “Because you (Abraham) have *obeyed* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:1](#); [6:5](#))



## on high, in the highest

### Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be “the most honored.”
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression “in the highest tree,” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression “on high” could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 1:13
- Psalms 69:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G1722, G5308, G5310, G5311

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:8](#))

## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordain, statute)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:15](#))

## partial, partiality

### Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:17
- Malachi 2:9
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 2:10-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:9](#))

## **pastor**

### **Definition:**

The term “pastor” is literally the same word as “shepherd.” It is used as a title for someone who is the spiritual leader for a group of believers.

- In English Bible versions, “pastor” only occurs one time, in the book of Ephesians. It is the same word as is translated as “shepherd” elsewhere.
- In some languages, the word for “pastor” is the same as the word for “shepherd.”
- It is also the same word as is used to refer to Jesus as the “good Shepherd.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the word for “shepherd” in the project language.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “shepherding Christian leader.”

(See also: shepherd, sheep)

### **Bible References:**

- Ephesians 4:11-13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7462, G4166

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:11](#))

## patient, patience, impatient

### Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, [forgive](#), [persevere](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:2](#))

## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3972, G4569

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [3:1](#))

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:2](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [4:3](#); [6:15](#); [6:23](#))



## perfect, complete

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:13](#))

## persevere, perseverance

### Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: [patient](#), trial)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:11
- Ephesians 6:18
- James 5:9-11
- Luke 8:14-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3115, G4343, G5281

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:18](#))

## pledge, pledged

### Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](#), oath, vow)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:14](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, [inherit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:14](#))

## power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:19](#); [1:21](#); [3:7](#); [3:16](#); [3:20](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:6](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:16; 6:18](#))



## predestine, predestined

### Definition:

The terms “predestine” and “predestined” refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

- This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
- Sometimes the word “foreordain” is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “predestine” could also be translated as “decide before” or “decide ahead of time.”
- The term “predestined” could be translated as “decided long ago” or “planned ahead of time” or “decided beforehand.”
- A phrase such as “predestined us” could be translated as “decided long ago that we” or “already decided ahead of time that we.”
- Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term “foreknew.”

(See also: foreknew)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4309

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1 General Notes](#); [1:5](#); [1:11](#))

## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:1; 4:1](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, vow)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:13](#); [2:12](#); [3:6](#); [6:2](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:20](#); [3:5](#); [4:11](#))

## provoke, provoked, provocation

### Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:4](#))

# psalm

## Definition:

The term “psalm” refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

- The Old Testament Book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
- The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
- Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
- In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.

(See also: David, [faith](#), joy, Moses, [holy](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 13:33
- Acts 13:35
- Colossians 3:16
- Luke 20:42

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2158, H2167, H4210, G5567, G5568

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:19](#))

## quench, quenched, unquenchable

### Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: [fruit](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 1:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:16](#))



## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:20](#); [2:6](#); [5:14](#))

## rebuke, reprove

### Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:11](#); [5:13](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:8](#))

## reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

### Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:19
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Matthew 5:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 5:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398, H3722, G604, G1259, G2433, G2643, G2644

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:16](#))

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:7](#); [1:14](#); [4:30](#); [5:16](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:17](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#); [5:13](#))



## revere, revered, reverence, reverent

### Definition:

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. “Revere” someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God’s commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: [fear](#), [honor](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:15-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- Isaiah 44:17
- Psalms 5:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G127, G1788, G2125, G2412, G5399, G5401

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:21](#))

## right hand

### Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: parallelism)
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), punish, rebel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:20](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, just, law, [law](#), [obey](#), pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Introduction to Ephesians](#); [Ephesians 4:24](#); [5:9](#); [6:1](#); [6:14](#))

## rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), governor, king, synagogue)

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:21](#); [2:2](#); [3:10](#); [6:12](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:2](#))



## saint

### Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [1:15](#); [1:18](#); [2:19](#); [3:8](#); [3:18](#); [4:12](#); [5:3](#); [6:18](#))

## sanctify, sanctification

### Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Genesis 2:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 6:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G37, G38

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:26](#))

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: demon, [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:27](#); [6:11](#); [6:16](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), deliver, punish, [sin](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:13](#); [2:5](#); [2:8](#); [6:17](#))

## Savior, savior

### Facts:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the Old Testament, God appointed judges to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them. These judges are sometimes called “saviors.” The Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, [Jesus](#), [save](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:10
- 2 Peter 2:20
- Acts 5:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 1:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3467, G4990

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:23](#))

## seal, sealed, unsealed

### Definition:

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), tomb)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:13](#); [4:30](#))



## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: appoint, [redeem](#), castout)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:22](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H0327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256
- (Enslave) H3533, G2615

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#))

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), prostitute, [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:3](#); [5:5](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), [false god](#), [humble](#), Isaiah, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:12](#))

# shield

## Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [Satan](#), [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 18:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:16](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31



- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2 General Notes](#); [2:1](#); [4:26](#))

# son

## Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), [Son of God](#), sons of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:2](#); [3:5](#); [5:6](#))

## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**.”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**.”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God**.”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God**!”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:13](#))

## soul, self, person

### Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means “I am tired.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:6](#))

## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), demon, breath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:3](#); [1:17](#); [2:2](#); [4:23](#); [5:19](#); [Notes](#); [6:12](#))



## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950,

G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732,  
G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:19](#); [3:16](#); [3:18](#); [6:10](#))

## subject, be subject to, subjection

### Facts:

A person is the “subject” of another person if the second person rules over the first. To “be subject to” is to “obey” or to “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: submit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:14-16
- 1 Kings 4:6
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- Hebrews 2:5
- Proverbs 12:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, G350, G1379, G1396, G1777, G3663, G5292, G5293

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:21](#); [5:24](#))

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:17](#))

## teach, teaching, untaught

### Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:21](#))

## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: disciple, preach)

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:12-15
- Ephesians 4:11-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Habakkuk 2:18
- James 3:2
- John 1:37-39
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:1** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:2** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:3** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:11](#))

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, Babylon, [Holy Spirit](#), tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:21](#))



## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:10](#))

## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H116, H227, H310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:10](#); [2:12](#); [5:16](#); [6:18](#))

## tremble, stagger

### Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:5](#))

## **trespass**

### **Definition:**

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), iniquity, [sin](#), transgress)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:7](#); [2:1](#); [2:5](#))

## tribulation, distresses, trouble

### Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: [Ephesians 3:13](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:13](#); [4:15](#); [4:21](#); [4:24](#); [4:25](#); [5:9](#); [6:14](#))

# Tychicus

## Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asia, [beloved](#), Colossae, [Ephesus](#), [faithful](#), [good news](#), minister)

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Colossians 4:9
- Titus 3:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5190

(Go back to: [Ephesians 6:21](#))



## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:8](#); [3:4](#); [3:20](#); [4:18](#); [5:17](#))

## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: [false god](#), [worthy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:17](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:2](#); [2:10](#); [4:1](#); [4:17](#); [5:2](#); [5:8](#); [5:15](#))

## water, deep

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The “deep” refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth’s surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:26](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:1](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [5:17](#); [6:6](#))

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:18](#))

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:8](#); [1:17](#); [3:10](#); [5:15](#))

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2



- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: [Ephesians 5:26; 6:17](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:9](#); [2:10](#); [4:12](#); [5:11](#))

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), Rome, godly)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: [Ephesians 1:4](#); [2:2](#); [2:12](#))

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:4
- 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 1:9-10
- Jeremiah 8:19
- Mark 1:7
- Matthew 3:10-12
- Philippians 1:25-27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G96, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

(Go back to: [Ephesians 4:1](#))

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(Go back to: [Ephesians 2:3](#); [4:31](#); [5:6](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton



John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedet  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George “Drew” Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Jack Messarra  
 Gene Mullen  
 Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
 Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
 Kristy Nickell  
 Tom Nickell  
 Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Dean Ropp  
 Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
 Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
 Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Leonard Smith  
 Suzanna Smith  
 Tim Span  
 Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
 Maria Tijerina  
 David Trombold, M. Div.  
 Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
 James Vigen  
 Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
 Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
 Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
 Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
 Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
 Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
 Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
 Matt Carlton  
 George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
 Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
 Michael Francis  
 Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
 Kailey Gregory  
 Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin  
 Jack Messarra  
 Gene Mullen  
 Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
 Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
 Kristy Nickell  
 Tom Nickell  
 Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Dean Ropp  
 Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
 Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
 Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
 Leonard Smith  
 Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
 David Trombold, M. Div.  
 James Vigen  
 Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
 Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
 Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
 Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
 Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
 Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
 Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
 Bev Staley  
 Carol Brinneman  
 Jody Garcia  
 Kara Anderson  
 Kim Puterbaugh  
 Lizz Carlton  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
 David Book  
 Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
 Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
 Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community